A large, light gray illustration of two rifles crossed in an 'X' shape, serving as a background for the title text. The rifles are detailed with magazines, triggers, and stocks.

**MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR  
ECHELONS ABOVE CORPS, CORPS,  
AND DIVISION MILITARY POLICE  
COMPANIES (COMBAT SUPPORT)**

MISSION TRAINING PLAN  
FOR ECHELONS ABOVE CORPS, CORPS AND DIVISION  
MILITARY POLICE COMPANY  
(COMBAT SUPPORT)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

|                                   | Page   |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <b>PREFACE</b>                    | iii  |
| <b>CHAPTER 1. Unit Training</b>   | 1-1  |
| 1-1                               | General 1-1                                      |
| 1-2                               | Supporting Material 1-1                          |
| 1-3                               | Contents 1-2                                     |
| 1-4                               | Missions and Tasks 1-2                           |
| 1-5                               | Training Principles 1-3                          |
| 1-6                               | Training Strategy 1-4                            |
| 1-7                               | Conducting Training 1-5                          |
| 1-8                               | Force Protection (Safety) 1-6                    |
| 1-9                               | Environmental Protection 1-10                    |
| 1-10                              | Evaluation 1-13                                  |
| 1-11                              | Feedback 1-13                                    |
| <b>CHAPTER 2. Training Matrix</b> | 2-1  |
| 2-1                               | General 2-1                                      |
| 2-2                               | Training Matrix: Mission to Collective Tasks 2-1 |
| <b>CHAPTER 3. Mission Outline</b> | 3-1  |
| 3-1                               | General 3-1                                      |
| 3-2                               | Mission Outline 3-1                              |

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

\*This publication supersedes ARTEP 19-17-30-MTP, 3 October 1988 and 19-77-30-MTP, 17 February 1989.

|  |     |   |                 |
|--|-----|---|-----------------|
| <b>CHAPTER 4. Training Exercises</b>               |     |   | 4-1             |
|  | 4-1 | General                                   | 4-1             |
|  | 4-2 | Field Training Exercise                   | 4-1             |
|  | 4-3 | Situational Training Exercises            | 4-1             |
| <b>CHAPTER 5. Training and Evaluation Outlines</b> |     |   | 5-1             |
|  | 5-1 | General                                   | 5-1             |
|  | 5-2 | Structure                                 | 5-1             |
|  | 5-3 | Format                                    | 5-1             |
|  | 5-4 | Use                                       | 5-3             |
|  | 5-5 | Table of Training and Evaluation Outlines | 5-5             |
| <b>CHAPTER 6. External Evaluations</b>             |     |   | 6-1             |
|  | 6-1 | General                                   | 6-1             |
|  | 6-2 | Preparing the Evaluation                  | 6-1             |
|  | 6-3 | Selecting the Observer Controllers        | 6-6             |
|  | 6-4 | Training the Observer Controllers         | 6-7             |
|  | 6-5 | Recording External Evaluation Information | 6-7             |
|  | 6-6 | Selecting and Training the OPFOR          | 6-11            |
|  | 6-7 | Conducting the Evaluation                 | 6-12            |
|  | 6-8 | Conducting the After-Action-Review        | 6-14            |
| <b>Appendix A. Combined Arms Training Strategy</b> |     |   | A-1             |
|  | A-1 | General                                   | A-1             |
|  | A-2 | Elements of the Unit Strategies           | A-1             |
|  | A-3 | Guide to the Maneuver Strategy            | A-3             |
|  | A-4 | Guide to the Gunnery Strategy             | A-4             |
|  | A-5 | Guide to the Soldier Strategy             | A-10            |
| <b>Appendix B. Verb List</b>                       |     |   | B-1             |
|  | B-1 | General                                   | B-1             |
|  | B-2 | Definitions                               | B-1             |
| <b>Glossary</b>                                    |     |   | Glossary-1      |
| <b>References</b>                                  |     |   | References-1    |
| <b>Questionnaire</b>                               |     |   | Questionnaire-1 |

## PREFACE

The purpose of this MTP is to provide a descriptive, performance-oriented training guide to assist leaders in training their units. This MTP aligns with and is part of the US Army training and tactical doctrine program. It contains tasks which support military police functions outlined in doctrinal manuals. Unit leaders use their METL to identify which collective tasks in this MTP must be trained. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the T&EOs in this MTP. Standards for training may be made more difficult but may not be lowered.

This MTP applies to the Division, Corps and EAC Military Police Combat Support Company organized under TOEs 19313L000, 19323L000, 19333L000, 19333F000 19343L000 19477L000, and 19677L000. The Division Provost Marshal Section, which is part of TOE 19313L000, 19323L000, 19333L000, and 19343L000 is addressed in ARTEP 19-476-MTP.

The proponent of this publication is HQ TRADOC. Submit changes for improving this publication on DA Form 2028 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms) and forward it to Commandant, US Army Military Police School, ATZN-MP-DA, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-5000.

Unless otherwise stated, whenever the masculine gender is used, both men and women are included.

## CHAPTER 1

### UNIT TRAINING

**1-1. General.** This MTP is designed to provide you with a tactical training and evaluation program for your company. It provides guidance on how to train, as well as the key missions on which to train. The specific details of your training program will depend on many factors, including the following:

- a. Unit's METL.
- b. Training directives and guidance established by the chain of command.
- c. Training priorities of your unit.
- d. Training resources and areas available.

**1-2. Supporting Material.** This MTP describes a mission-oriented company training program. The unit training program includes the following:

**a. ARTEP 19-476-MTP.** This manual describes the mission and tasks for the division provost marshal section, Corps, and EAC military police Battalion, combat support.

**b. ARTEP 19-313-30-MTP.** This manual describes the mission and tasks for the DIV, Corps, and EAC military police company, combat support.

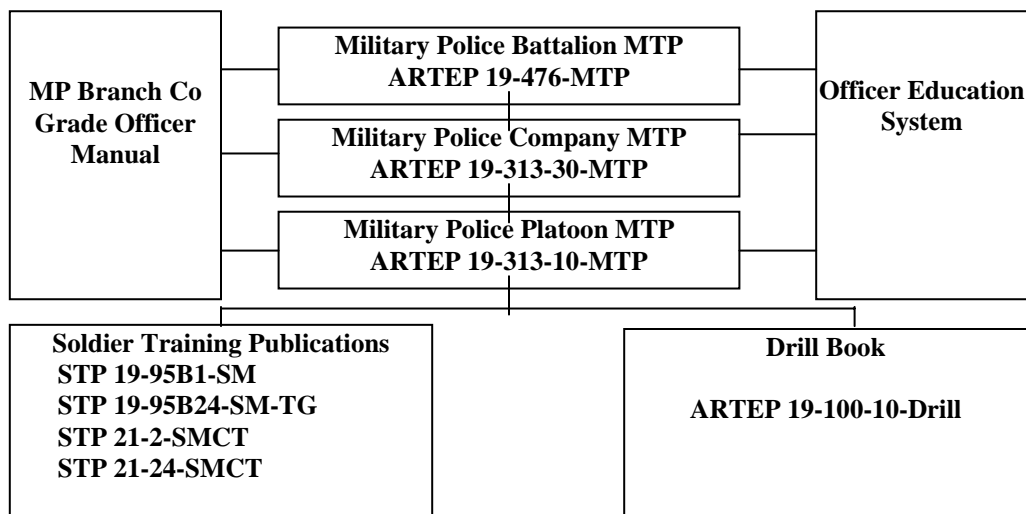
**c. ARTEP 19-313-10-MTP.** This manual describes the mission and tasks for the DIV, CORPS, and EAC military police platoon, combat support.

**d. ARTEP 19-100-10 Drills.** These drills are used by the company commanders and platoon leaders to train skills that must be sustained by the unit.

**e. STPs.** STPs for the appropriate MOS and skill levels.

**f. Other.** OES task list for company commanders and platoon leaders.

This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1.



**Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship Diagram.**

**1-3. Contents.** This MTP is organized into six chapters:

**a. Chapter 1, Unit Training.** Provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. It explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program.

**b. Chapter 2, Training Matrix.** Shows the relationship between missions and collective tasks.

**c. Chapter 3, Mission Outline.** Presents a graphic portrayal of the relationship between the unit's critical wartime mission and the subordinate tasks inherent to that mission.

**d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises.** Consists of one FTX and five STXs. These exercises provide training information and a scenario to give you a preconstructed, flexible vehicle for sustaining the training of the key mission. They may also serve as part of an internal or external evaluation designed to have the company execute the mission in a tactical setting. These exercises may be modified to suit the needs of the unit.

**e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.** Provides the training criteria for tasks that the unit must master to perform its critical wartime mission. These training criteria orient on the levels of training executed by the company. Each task is a T&EO that identifies tasks, steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and OPFOR counter tasks. Each T&EO constitutes a part of one or more critical missions and, in various combinations, make up larger training vehicles such as the FTX and STXs in Chapter 4.

**f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation.** Provides instructions for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation.

**g. Appendix A.** This appendix contains the Army's Combined Arms Training Strategy. It provides direction and guidance on how the Total Army will train and identifies the resources required to support that training. The CATS provides the tools that enables the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner.

**h. Appendix B.** This appendix defines the intended meanings of verbs used to describe the actions used to perform the collective tasks found in this manual. Trainers, performers, and evaluators must apply a consistent interpretation to task performance to ensure training is conducted to standard.

**1-4. Mission and Tasks.**

a. The company's mission is to provide military police support during peace, conflict and war. This MTP is composed of five major functions that the company must execute to accomplish the mission. The following is a list of the functions for this unit:

(1) Maneuver and Mobility Support

(2) Area Security

(3) Interment/Resettlement

(4) Law & Order

(5) Police Intelligence Operations

b. Each of the tasks may be trained individually or jointly. They must be oriented on the training criteria provided in the T&EOs. Collective task T&EOs can be linked through a logical, tactical scenario

to form an STX. Various combinations of STXs can be used in developing an FTX for the company to practice its entire mission responsibility. Several STXs can be developed into an external evaluation designed by the next higher echelon to evaluate the company's ability to perform multiple functions under stress in a realistic environment.

c. Platoon tasks are trained in the same way as described above.

d. Leader tasks are individual tasks trained through STP manuals, OES task listing, battle simulations, and execution of the unit's missions.

e. Individual tasks are mastered through training to the standards outlined in STPs. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 show the individual tasks that support collective task training.

**1-5. Training Principles.** This MTP is based on the training principles in FM 25-100.

**a. Train as Combined Arms and Services Teams.** Today's Army doctrine requires combined arms and services teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to execute combined arms and services operations without additional training or lengthy adjustment periods. Combined arms proficiency develops when teams train together. Leaders must regularly practice cross attachment of the full operational spectrum of combat, combat support, and combat service support units.

**b. Train as You Fight.** The goal of combat-level training is to achieve combat-level standards. Every effort must be made to attain this difficult goal. Within the confines of safety and common sense, leaders must be willing to accept less than perfect results initially and demand realism in training. They must integrate such realistic conditions as smoke, noise, simulated NBC, battlefield debris, loss of key leaders, and cold weather.

**c. Use Appropriate Doctrine.** Training must conform to Army doctrine. In units, new soldiers will have little time to learn nonstandard procedures. Therefore, units must train tasks to the Army standards contained in mission training plans, drill books, soldier's manuals, regulations, and other training and doctrinal publications.

**d. Use Performance-Oriented Training.** Units become proficient in the performance of critical tasks and missions by practicing the tasks and mission. Soldiers learn best by doing, using a hands-on approach. Leaders are responsible for developing and executing a training strategy that will provide these opportunities. All training assets and resources, to include simulators, simulations and training devices, must be included in the strategy.

**e. Train to Challenge.** Tough, realistic, intellectually, and physically challenging training both excites and motivates soldiers and leaders. It builds competence and confidence by developing and honing skills. Challenging training inspires excellence by fostering initiative, enthusiasm, and eagerness to learn.

**f. Train to Sustain Proficiency.** Once individuals and units have trained to a required level of proficiency, leaders must structure collective and individual training plans to repeat critical task training at the minimum frequency necessary for sustainment. MTPs and STPs are tools to help achieve and sustain collective and individual proficiency.

**g. Train Using Multiechelon Techniques.** To use available time and resources most effectively, commanders must simultaneously train individuals, leaders, and units at each echelon in the organization during training events.

**h. Train to Maintain.** Maintenance is a vital part of every training program. Maintenance training designed to keep equipment in the fight is as equally important to soldiers as being expert in its use.

Soldiers and leaders are responsible for maintaining all assigned equipment in a high state of readiness in support of training or combat employment.

**i. Make Commanders the Primary Trainer.** The leaders in the chain of command are responsible for the training and performance of their soldiers and units. They are the primary training managers and trainers for their organization.

**1-6. Training Strategy.** The training program developed and executed by a unit to train to standards its critical wartime mission is a component of the Army's Combined Arms Training Strategy. The purpose of the CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the Total Army will train and to identify the resources required to support that training. The CATS provides the tools that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. See Appendix A for the complete discussion of CATS.

a. The unit training strategies central to CATS provide the commander with a descriptive "menu" for training reflecting that while there is an optimal way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units in the Army will have the exact mix of resources required to execute an optimal training strategy.

b. The unit's training strategy consists of three separate training strategies – maneuver, gunnery and soldier. When integrated with the training tasks found in the MTP, they form a comprehensive and focused training strategy that allows the unit to train to standard.

c. When developing the company's training plan, the company will identify the training tasks from the MTP required to train the METL. Then using the training strategies found in the MTP, the leader develops a battle-focused training plan by integrating and linking METL derived MTP training tasks with CATS training events.

**1-7. Conducting Training.** This MTP is designed to facilitate the planning, preparation, and conduct of unit training as explained in the FM 25-series.

a. Commanders will assign the mission and/or supporting tasks for which they intend to develop training based on the METL and the higher echelon commander's training guidance. Trainers must plan and execute platoon training in support of this guidance.

b. Review the mission outline in Chapter 3 to determine whether the FTX and STXs provided will support or can be modified to support your commander's guidance. If they do not support the guidance or need to be modified, refer to the matrix in Chapter 2. This matrix provides a listing of all critical collective tasks that must be mastered to perform the mission.

c. Prioritize the tasks that need training. You will never have time to train everything. You must orient on the greatest challenges and most difficult sustainment skills.

d. Integrate training tasks into the training schedule. Use the following procedures to do this:

- (1) List the tasks in the priority and frequency they need to be trained.
- (2) Determine the amount of time required and how you can use multiechelon training to the best effect.
- (3) Determine where the training can take place.
- (4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.
- (5) Organize your needs into blocks of time and training vehicles.



e. Provide the task list to your commander. Once approved, the tasks selected are then scheduled on the unit training schedule.

f. Determine the things you need to conduct the training such as ammunition, MILES equipment, or suitable training area. Provide these requirements to your headquarters in sufficient time to ensure adequate acquisition and coordination.

g. Keep subordinate leaders informed and oversee the training they are conducting. Be sure that standards are rigidly enforced. If they are not, your unit and soldiers will suffer.

#### **1-8. Force Protection (Safety).**

a. Safety is a component of force protection. Commanders, leaders, and soldiers use risk assessment and management to tie force protection into the military around the mission. Risk management assigns responsibility, institutionalizes commander's review of operational safety, and lead to decision making at a level of command appropriate to the risk. The objective of safety is to help units' protect combat power through accident prevention that enables units to win fast and decisively, with minimum losses. Safety is an integral part of all combat operations. Safety begins with readiness that determines a unit's ability to perform its METL to standard. Readiness standards addressed during METL assessment are--

- (1) Soldiers with the self-discipline to consistently perform task to standard.
- (2) Leaders who are ready, willing, and able to enforce standards.
- (3) Training that provides skills needed for performance to standard.
- (4) Standards and procedures for tasks performance that are clear and practical.
- (5) Support for task performance, including equipment, personnel, maintenance, facilities and services.

b. Risk management is a tool that addresses the root causes (readiness shortcomings) of accidents. It assists commanders and leaders in not only identifying what the next accident is going to be, but it also helps identify who will have the next accident. Risk management is a way to put more realism into training without paying the price in deaths, injuries, or damaged equipment.

c. Safety demands total chain of command involvement in planning, preparing, executing and evaluating training. The chain of command and their responsibilities are as follows:

- (1) Commanders.
  - (a) Seek optimum, not adequate, performance.
  - (b) Specify the risk they will accept to accomplish the mission.
  - (c) Select risk reductions provided by staff.
  - (d) Accept or reject residual risk, based on the benefit to be derived.
  - (e) Train and motivate leaders at all levels to effectively use risk management concepts.
- (2) Staff.

training. (a) Assists the commander in assessing risks and develops risk reduction options for

measures. (b) Integrates risk controls in plans, orders, METL standards and performance

(c) Eliminates unnecessary safety restrictions that diminish training effectiveness.

(d) Assesses safety performance during training.

(e) Evaluates safety performance during AARs.

(3) Subordinate Leaders.

they lead. (a) Apply consistently effective risk management concepts and methods to operations

(b) Report risk issues beyond their control or authority to their superiors.

(4) Individual Soldiers.

(a) Report unsafe conditions and acts and correct the situation when possible.

(b) Establish a buddy system to keep a safety watch on one another.

(c) Take responsibility for personal safety.

(d) Work as a team member.

(e) Modify own risk behavior.

d. Risk management is a five-step cyclic process that is easily integrated into the decision-making process outlined in FM 101-5. The five steps are as follows:

(1) Identify hazards. Identify the most probable hazards for the missions.

(2) Assess hazards. Analyze each hazard to determine the probability of its causing an accident and the probable effect of the accident. Identify control options to eliminate or reduce the hazard. The Army Standard Risk Assessment Matrix (Figure 1-2) is a tool for assessing hazards.

| <b>HAZARD PROBABILITY</b> |          |            |        |            |
|---------------------------|----------|------------|--------|------------|
| FREQUENT                  | PROBABLE | OCCASIONAL | REMOTE | IMPROBABLE |
| A                         | B        | C          | D      | E          |
|                           |          |            |        |            |

|  |                     |            |                       |  |            |
|--|---------------------|------------|-----------------------|--|------------|
| <b>E<br/>F<br/>F<br/>E<br/>C<br/>T</b> | <b>CATASTROPHIC</b> | <b>I</b>   | <b>EXTREMELY HIGH</b> |  |            |
|  | <b>CRITICAL</b>     | <b>II</b>  |                       |  |            |
|  | <b>MARGINAL</b>     | <b>III</b> | <b>MEDIUM</b>         |  |            |
|  | <b>NEGLIGIBLE</b>   | <b>IV</b>  |                       |  | <b>LOW</b> |

**Effect**

- Catastrophic Death or permanent total disability, system loss, major property damage.
- Critical Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of 3 months, major system damage, significant property damage.
- Marginal Minor injury, lost workday accident, compensable injury or illness, minor system damage, minor property damage.
- Negligible First aid or minor supportive medical treatment, minor systems impairment.

**Probability**

- Frequent Individual soldier/item.....Occurs often in career/equipment service life.  
All soldiers exposed or item inventory.....Continuously experienced.
- Probable Individual soldier/item.....Occurs several times in career/equipment service life.  
All soldiers exposed or item inventory.....Occurs frequently.
- Occasional Individual soldier/item.....Occurs sometime in career/equipment service life.  
All soldiers exposed or item inventory.....Occurs sporadically, or several times in inventory service life.
- Remote Individual soldier/item.....Possible to occur in career/equipment service life.  
All soldiers exposed or item inventory.....Remote chance of occurrence; expected to occur sometime in inventory service life.
- Improbable Individual soldier/item.....Can assume will not occur in career/equipment service life.  
All soldiers exposed or item inventory.....Possible, but improbable; occurs only very rarely.

**Risk Levels**

- Extremely High Loss of ability to accomplish mission.
- High Significantly degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission standards.
- Medium Degrades mission capabilities in terms of required mission.
- Low Little or no impact on mission accomplishment.

**Figure 1-2. Army Standard Risk Assessment Matrix.**

(3) Make risk decisions. Weigh the risk against the benefits of performing the operations. Accept no unnecessary risks and make any residual risk decisions at the proper level of command.

(4) Implement controls. Integrate specific controls into OPLANs, OPORDs, SOPs and rehearsals. Communicate controls to the individual soldier.

(5) Supervise. Determine the effectiveness of controls in reducing the probability and effect of identified hazards to include follow up and after action review. Develop the lessons learned.

e. Fratricide is a component of force protection and is closely related to safety. Fratricide is the employment of weapons, with the intent to kill the enemy or destroy his equipment, that results in unforeseen and unintentional death, injury or damage to friendly personnel or equipment. Fratricide is by definition an accident. Risk assessment and management is the mechanism with which incidence of fratricide can be controlled.

f. The primary causes of fratricide are:

(1) Direct fire control plan failures. These occur when units fail to develop defensive and, particularly, offensive fire control plans.

(2) Land navigation failures. These result when units stray out of sector, report wrong locations, and become disoriented.

(3) Combat identification failures. These failures include gunners or pilots being unable to distinguish thermal and optical signatures near the maximum range of their sighting systems and units in proximity mistaking each other for the enemy under limited visibility conditions.

(4) Inadequate control measures. Units fail to disseminate the minimum maneuver and fire support control measures necessary to tie control measures to recognizable terrain or events. Paragraph 1 of OPORD is the commander's opportunity to "paint the picture" of the battlefield indicating location and activities of adjacent friendly units.

(5) Reporting communication failures. Units at all levels face problems in generating timely, accurate, and complete reports as locations and tactical situations change.

(6) Weapons error. Lapses in individual discipline lead to charge errors, accidental discharges, mistakes with explosives and hand grenades, and similar incidents.

(7) Battlefield hazards. Unexploded ordnance, unmarked or unrecorded minefields, FASCAM, and booby traps litter the battlefield. Failure to mark, remove, record or anticipate these hazards increases the risk of friendly casualties.

g. Fratricide results in unacceptable losses and increases the risk of mission failure. Fratricide undermines the unit's ability to survive and function. Units experiencing fratricide observe these consequences.

(1) Loss of confidence in the unit leadership.

(2) Increasing self-doubt among leaders.

(3) Hesitation to use supporting combat systems.

(4) Over supervision of units.

(5) Hesitation to conduct night operations.

(6) Loss of aggressiveness during fire and maneuver.

(7) Loss of initiative.

(8) Disrupted operations.

(9) General degradation of cohesiveness, morale, and combat power.

**1-9. Environmental Protection.** Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease, and if possible, eliminate, damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management, and is based on the same philosophy as safety risk management. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps:

**a. Identify hazards.** Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during analysis of METT-TC factors. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

**b. Assess the hazard.** Analyze potential severity of environmental degradation using the Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix (Figure 1-3). Severity of environmental degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, medium, or low, using the environmental risk assessment matrixes.

**c. Make environmental risk decisions.** Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

**d. Brief the chain of command.** Brief the chain of command (to include installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

**e. Implement controls.** Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

**f. Supervise.** Supervise and enforce environmental protection standards.

|   |   |             |         |   |   |   |
|---|---|-------------|---------|---|---|---|
| Environmental area                              |   |             | Rating: |   |   |   |
| Unit Operations                                 |   | Risk Impact |         |   |   |   |
| Movement of heavy vehicles/systems              | 5 | 4           | 3       | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Movement of Personnel and light vehicles/system | 5 | 4           | 3       | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Assembly area activities                        | 5 | 4           | 3       | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Field maintenance of equipment                  | 5 | 4           | 3       | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Garrison maintenance of equipment               | 5 | 4           | 3       | 2 | 1 | 0 |

Environmental Risk Area Assessment Worksheet

|                                    | Movement of heavy vehicles/systems | Movement of personnel and light systems | Assembly area activities | Field maintenance of equipment | Garrison maintenance of equipment | Risk rating |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|--------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------|
| Air pollution                      |                                    |   |                          |                                |                                   |             |
| Archeological and historical sites |                                    |   |                          |                                |                                   |             |
| Hazardous materiel/waste           |                                    |   |                          |                                |                                   |             |
| Noise pollution                    |                                    |   |                          |                                |                                   |             |
| Threatened/endangered species      |                                    |   |                          |                                |                                   |             |
| Water pollution                    |                                    |   |                          |                                |                                   |             |
| Wetland protection                 |                                    |   |                          |                                |                                   |             |
| Overall rating                     |                                    |   |                          |                                |                                   |             |

Overall Environmental Risk Assessment Form

| Category       | Range   | Environmental Damage | Decision Maker    |
|----------------|---------|----------------------|-------------------|
| Low            | 0-58    | Little or none       | Appropriate level |
| Medium         | 59-117  | Minor                | Appropriate level |
| High           | 118-149 | Significant          | Division Cmdr     |
| Extremely High | 150-175 | Severe               | MACOM Cmdr        |

Risk Categories

**Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix.**

**1-10. Evaluation.** The T&EOs in Chapter 5 list the standards that you must meet for each task.

a. Evaluations can be either internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels and must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and are conducted by the headquarters two levels above. (See Chapter 6 for more information on external evaluations.)

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Every training exercise provides the potential for evaluation feedback. Every evaluation is a training session. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small group training is easy to do. In higher level exercises, it is usually feasible to do this with outside evaluators. Plan AARs at frequent, logical intervals during exercises (usually after the completion of a major event). This is a proven technique that will allow you to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. Also, it gets everyone involved and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR. It also provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

**1-11. Feedback.** Recommendations for improvements of this ARTEP MTP are requested. Feedback will help ensure that this MTP answers the training needs of units in the field. Please send DA Form 2028 comments to the address reflected in paragraph 3 of the Preface.

## CHAPTER 2

### Training Matrixes

2-1. General. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel. The mission identification table listed below (Figure 2-1) provides mission identification for the unit.

| <b>Mission Identification Table</b>  |
|--|
| <b>Mission Title</b>   |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• AREA SECURITY OPERATIONS</li> <li>• INTERNMENT/RESETTLEMENT OPERATIONS</li> <li>• LAW &amp; ORDER OPERATIONS</li> <li>• MANEUVER &amp; MOBILITY SUPPORT OPERATIONS</li> <li>• POLICE INTELLIGENCE OPERATIONS</li> </ul> |

Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table.

2-2. Mission-to-Collective Tasks Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2), identifies the mission and their supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate BOS which are indicated by an asterisk in the matrix. The BOS used in this matrix are defined in TRADOC Pam 11-9. A specific mission is trained by identifying collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

| Collective Tasks    |  | AREA SECURITY OPERATIONS | INTERNMENT/ RESETTLEMENT | LAW & ORDER OPERATIONS | MANEUVER & MOBILITY SUPPORT |
|---------------------|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <b>Intelligence</b> |  |                          |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-20002          | Supervise Area Reconnaissance Operations               | <b>X</b>                 |                          |                        | <b>X</b>                    |
| 19-2-20003          | Supervise Zone Reconnaissance Operations               | <b>X</b>                 |                          |                        | <b>X</b>                    |
| 19-2-51001          | Coordinate Criminal Intelligence                       |                          |                          | <b>X</b>               |                             |
| 19-2-52001          | Coordinate Intelligence Collecting and Reporting       | <b>X</b>                 | <b>X</b>                 | <b>X</b>               | <b>X</b>                    |
| 19-2-11002          | Supervise Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance        | <b>X</b>                 |                          |                        | <b>X</b>                    |
| <b>Maneuver</b>     |  |                          |                          |                        |                             |
| 07-2-C314           | Secure and Defend Unit Position                        | <b>X</b>                 | <b>X</b>                 | <b>X</b>               | <b>X</b>                    |
| 19-2-22001          | Direct Response Force Operations                       | <b>X</b>                 |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-22007          | Direct A Delay   | <b>X</b>                 |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-22008          | Supervise a Battle Handover to a Tactical Combat Force | <b>X</b>                 |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-22009          | Supervise Movement to Contact                          | <b>X</b>                 |                          |                        |                             |



| Collective Tasks                  |   | AREA SECURITY OPERATIONS | INTERNMENT/ RESETTLEMENT | LAW & ORDER OPERATIONS | MANEUVER & MOBILITY SUPPORT |
|-----------------------------------|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 19-2-22010                        | Direct a Deliberate Attack                                    | X                        |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-22011                        | Monitor a Hasty Attack  | X                        |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-22012                        | Supervise Screening Operations                                | X                        |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-60003                        | Occupy A Site   | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 19-2-11001                        | Coordinate Military Police Support to River Crossing          |                          |                          |                        | X                           |
| 19-2-12004                        | Coordinate Military Police Support to Passage of Lines        |                          |                          |                        | X                           |
| <b>Mobility and Survivability</b> |   |                          |                          |                        |                             |
| 03-2-C029                         | Prepare for a friendly nuclear strike                         | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 03-3-C209                         | React to Smoke Operations                                     | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 05-2-C301                         | Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment                             | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 12-2-C332                         | Maintain Operations Security                                  | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 19-2-20004                        | Supervise Convoy Security                                     | X                        |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-20008                        | Supervise Security for a Conventional Ammunition Supply Point | X                        |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-20009                        | Conduct Deep-Water Port Security                              | X                        |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-20010                        | Supervise Pipeline Security                                   | X                        |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-21001                        | Supervise a Security of Designated Personnel                  | X                        |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-22002                        | Supervise MP Response to Base/Base Cluster Defense            | X                        |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-22004                        | Supervise Security of Critical Sites                          | X                        |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-22006                        | Supervise Cordon and Search Operations                        | X                        |                          |                        |                             |
| 3-3-1041                          | Conduct Radiological Survey                                   | X                        |                          |                        |                             |
| 3-3-C202                          | Prepare For A Chemical Attack                                 | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 3-3-C203                          | Respond To A Chemical Attack                                  | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 3-3-C208                          | Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area                      | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 3-3-C222                          | Respond To The Residual Effects Of A Nuclear Attack           | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 3-3-C223                          | Respond To The Initial Effects Of A Nuclear Attack            | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 3-3-C224                          | Conduct Operational Decontamination                           | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |

| Collective Tasks              |  | AREA SECURITY OPERATIONS | INTERNMENT/ RESETTLEMENT | LAW & ORDER OPERATIONS | MANEUVER & MOBILITY SUPPORT |
|-------------------------------|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 3-3-C225                      | Conduct Chemical Reconnaissance  | X                        |                          |                        |                             |
| 3-3-C226                      | Cross A Chemically Contaminated Area   | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 55-2-C324                     | Conduct A Convoy   | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 19-2-12002                    | Supervise Route Regulation Enforcement   |                          |                          |                        | X                           |
| 19-2-12003                    | Supervise Route Signing  |                          |                          |                        | X                           |
| 19-2-13001                    | Supervise Dislocated Civilian Control Operations                               |                          |                          |                        | X                           |
| 19-2-13002                    | Supervise Straggler Control Operations   |                          |                          |                        | X                           |
| <b>Air Defense</b>            |  |                          |                          |                        |                             |
| 44-2-C307                     | Use Passive Air Defense Measures   | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| <b>Combat Service Support</b> |  |                          |                          |                        |                             |
| 10-2-C317                     | Provide Food Service Support   | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 10-2-C318                     | Perform Unit Mortuary Affairs Operations                                       | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 10-2-C320                     | Provide Unit Supply Support  | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 12-2-C201.19-1201             | Maintain Unit Strength   | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 19-2-10001                    | Conduct Unit Deployment  | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 19-2-20001                    | Supervise Area Damage Control Operations                                       | X                        |                          |                        | X                           |
| 19-2-20011                    | Supervise Railway Security   | X                        |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-22005                    | Supervise Security of Command Post   | X                        | X                        | X                      |                             |
| 19-2-31003                    | Supervise EPW Holding Area   |                          | X                        |                        |                             |
| 19-2-31004                    | Supervise EPW/CI Collecting, Processing and Evacuating                         |                          | X                        |                        |                             |
| 19-2-31005                    | Process Captured Documents and Equipment                                       |                          | X                        |                        |                             |
| 19-2-32002                    | Supervise Evacuation of U.S. Military Prisoners                                |                          | X                        |                        |                             |
| 19-2-32003                    | Supervise Field Detention Facility (FDF) for US Military Prisoners             |                          | X                        |                        |                             |
| 19-2-33001                    | Supervise Military Police Support to Populace and Resource Control Operations  |                          | X                        |                        |                             |
| 19-2-33002                    | Provide Military Police Support to Dislocated Civilian Resettlement Operations |                          | X                        |                        |                             |

| Collective Tasks           |  | AREA SECURITY OPERATIONS | INTERNMENT/ RESETTLEMENT | LAW & ORDER OPERATIONS | MANEUVER & MOBILITY SUPPORT |
|----------------------------|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 19-2-40001                 | Perform Company-Level Law and Order Operations                 |                          |                          | X                      |                             |
| 19-2-40002                 | Establish an MP Law and Order Operations Center                |                          |                          | X                      |                             |
| 19-2-40003                 | Conduct Company-Level Civil Disturbance Control Operations     |                          | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 19-2-41001                 | Coordinate Law Enforcement Patrol Operations                   |                          |                          | X                      |                             |
| 19-2-41002                 | Provide MP Investigative Support                               |                          |                          | X                      |                             |
| 43-2-C322                  | Perform Unit Level Maintenance                                 | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 7-3-C228                   | Occupy Assembly Area   | X                        |                          |                        | X                           |
| 8-2-0003                   | Treat Casualties   | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 8-2-C316                   | Transport Casualties   | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 8-2-R303                   | Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction And Prevention Procedures | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 8-2-R315                   | Perform Field Sanitation Functions                             | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| <b>Command and Control</b> |  |                          |                          |                        |                             |
| 19-2-0031                  | Perform unit communications                                    | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |
| 19-2-60009                 | Issue Operations Order   | X                        | X                        | X                      | X                           |

| Collective Tasks                  |   | POLICE INTELLIGENCE OPERATIONS |
|-----------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|
| <b>Intelligence</b>               |   |                                |
| 19-2-20002                        | Supervise Area Reconnaissance Operations                      | X                              |
| 19-2-20003                        | Supervise Zone Reconnaissance Operations                      | X                              |
| 19-2-51001                        | Coordinate Criminal Intelligence                              | X                              |
| 19-2-52001                        | Coordinate Intelligence Collecting and Reporting              | X                              |
| 19-2-11002                        | Supervise Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance               | X                              |
| <b>Maneuver</b>                   |   |                                |
| 07-2-C314                         | SECURE and Defend Unit Position                               |                                |
| 19-2-22001                        | Direct Response Force Operations                              |                                |
| 19-2-22007                        | Direct A Delay  |                                |
| 19-2-22008                        | Supervise a Battle Handover to a Tactical Combat Force        |                                |
| 19-2-22009                        | Supervise Movement to Contact                                 |                                |
| 19-2-22010                        | Direct a Deliberate Attack                                    |                                |
| 19-2-22011                        | Monitor a Hasty Attack  |                                |
| 19-2-22012                        | Supervise Screening Operations                                |                                |
| 19-2-60003                        | Occupy A Site   | X                              |
| 19-2-11001                        | Coordinate Military Police Support to River Crossing          |                                |
| 19-2-12004                        | Coordinate Military Police Support to Passage of Lines        |                                |
| <b>Mobility and Survivability</b> |   |                                |
| 03-2-C029                         | Prepare For A Friendly Nuclear Strike                         | X                              |
| 03-3-C209                         | React to Smoke Operations                                     | X                              |
| 05-2-C301                         | Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment                             | X                              |
| 12-2-C332                         | Maintain Operations Security                                  | X                              |
| 19-2-20004                        | Supervise Convoy Security                                     |                                |
| 19-2-20008                        | Supervise Security for a Conventional Ammunition Supply Point |                                |
| 19-2-20009                        | Conduct Deep-Water Port Security                              |                                |

| Collective Tasks              |   | POLICE INTELLIGENCE OPERATIONS |
|-------------------------------|---|--------------------------------|
| 19-2-20010                    | Supervise Pipeline Security                         |                                |
| 19-2-21001                    | Supervise a Security of Designated Personnel        |                                |
| 19-2-22002                    | Supervise MP Response to Base/Base Cluster Defense  |                                |
| 19-2-22004                    | Supervise Security of Critical Sites                |                                |
| 19-2-22006                    | Supervise Cordon and Search Operations              |                                |
| 3-3-1041                      | Conduct Radiological Survey                         |                                |
| 3-3-C202                      | Prepare For A Chemical Attack                       | X                              |
| 3-3-C203                      | Respond To A Chemical Attack                        | X                              |
| 3-3-C208                      | Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area            | X                              |
| 3-3-C222                      | Respond To The Residual Effects Of A Nuclear Attack | X                              |
| 3-3-C223                      | Respond To The Initial Effects Of A Nuclear Attack  | X                              |
| 3-3-C224                      | Conduct Operational Decontamination                 | X                              |
| 3-3-C225                      | Conduct Chemical Reconnaissance                     |                                |
| 3-3-C226                      | Cross A Chemically Contaminated Area                | X                              |
| 55-2-C324                     | Conduct A Convoy                                    | X                              |
| 19-2-12002                    | Supervise Route Regulation Enforcement              |                                |
| 19-2-12003                    | Supervise Route Signing                             |                                |
| 19-2-13001                    | Supervise Dislocated Civilian Control Operations    |                                |
| 19-2-13002                    | Supervise Straggler Control Operations              |                                |
| <b>Air Defense</b>            |   |                                |
| 44-2-C307                     | Use passive air defense measures                    | X                              |
| <b>Combat Service Support</b> |   |                                |
| 10-2-C317                     | Provide Food Service Support                        | X                              |
| 10-2-C318                     | Perform Unit Mortuary Affairs Operations            | X                              |
| 10-2-C320                     | Provide Unit Supply Support                         | X                              |
| 12-2-C201.19-1201             | Maintain Unit Strength                              | X                              |
| 19-2-10001                    | Conduct Unit Deployment                             | X                              |

| <b>Collective Tasks</b>    |  | <b>POLICE INTELLIGENCE OPERATIONS</b> |
|----------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| 19-2-20001                 | Supervise Area Damage Control Operations                                       |                                       |
| 19-2-20011                 | Supervise Railway Security   |                                       |
| 19-2-22005                 | Supervise Security of Command Post   |                                       |
| 19-2-31003                 | Supervise EPW Holding Area   | <b>X</b>                              |
| 19-2-31004                 | Supervise EPW/CI Collecting, Processing and Evacuating                         |                                       |
| 19-2-31005                 | Process Captured Documents and Equipment                                       | <b>X</b>                              |
| 19-2-32002                 | Supervise Evacuation of U.S. Military Prisoners                                | <b>X</b>                              |
| 19-2-32003                 | Supervise Field Detention Facility (FDF) for US Military Prisoners             |                                       |
| 19-2-33001                 | Supervise Military Police Support to Populace and Resource Control Operations  | <b>X</b>                              |
| 19-2-33002                 | Provide Military Police Support to Dislocated Civilian Resettlement Operations | <b>X</b>                              |
| 19-2-40001                 | Perform Company-Level Law and Order Operations                                 |                                       |
| 19-2-40002                 | Establish an MP Law and Order Operations Center                                |                                       |
| 19-2-40003                 | Conduct Company-Level Civil Disturbance Control Operations                     | <b>X</b>                              |
| 19-2-41001                 | Coordinate Law Enforcement Patrol Operations                                   |                                       |
| 19-2-41002                 | Provide MP Investigative Support   |                                       |
| 43-2-C322                  | Perform Unit Level Maintenance   | <b>X</b>                              |
| 7-3-C228                   | Occupy Assembly Area   |                                       |
| 8-2-0003                   | Treat Casualties   | <b>X</b>                              |
| 8-2-C316                   | Transport Casualties   | <b>X</b>                              |
| 8-2-R303                   | Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction And Prevention Procedures                 | <b>X</b>                              |
| 8-2-R315                   | Perform Field Sanitation Functions   | <b>X</b>                              |
| <b>Command and Control</b> |  |                                       |
| 19-2-0031                  | Perform Unit communications  | <b>X</b>                              |
| 19-2-60009                 | Issue Operations Order   | <b>X</b>                              |

## CHAPTER 3

### MISSION OUTLINE

**3-1. General.** The mission outline illustrates the relationship between the missions and their supporting tasks.

**3-2. Mission Outline.** Since unit training is mission-oriented, the mission outline (Figure 3-1) shows how task training contributes to the ability of this unit to perform its missions. The mission outline provides the commander with a visual outline of his unit's missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training.

#### FTX 19-2-E0001 PROVIDE MILITARY POLICE SUPPORT

| STX<br>Route Regulation<br>and Enforcement<br>19-2-E0002   | STX<br>Security of<br>Designated Assets<br>19-2-E0003   | STX<br>Internment/<br>Resettlement<br>Operations<br>19-2-E0004   | STX<br>MP Support to<br>Combat<br>Operations<br>19-2-E0005                          | STX<br>MP Support to<br>Battlefield<br>Movement<br>19-2-E0006                |
|--|---|--|---|--|
| Supervise Route<br>Regulation and<br>Surveillance 19-2-<br>11002   | Supervise Security<br>of a Critical Site<br>19-2-22004  | Supervise Field<br>Detention Facility<br>(FDF) for US<br>Military Prisoners<br>(EAC/EAD) 19-2-<br>32003  | Direct a Delay<br>19-2-20007  | Coordinate MP<br>Support to a River<br>Crossing 19-2-<br>11001               |
| Supervise Route<br>Regulation and<br>Enforcement 19-2-<br>12002  | Supervise Security<br>for Designated<br>Persons 19-2-<br>21001  | Supervise EPW<br>Holding Area 19-2-<br>31003   | Supervise<br>Screening 19-2-<br>22012   | Coordinate MP<br>Support to<br>Passage of Lines<br>Operations 19-2-<br>22009 |
| Supervise<br>Straggler Control<br>Operations 19-2-<br>13002  | Supervise Convoy<br>Security 19-2-<br>20004   | Supervise<br>Dislocated Civilian<br>Control Operations<br>19-2-13001   | Supervise a Battle<br>Handoff to a<br>Tactical Combat<br>Force (TCF) 19-2-<br>22008 |  |
| Supervise<br>Dislocated Civilian<br>Control Operations<br>19-2-13001<br>Coordinate<br>Intelligence<br>Collecting and<br>Reporting 19-2-<br>52001 | Supervise Security<br>of a Command<br>Post 19-2-22005<br><br>Supervise MP<br>Response to<br>Base/Base Cluster<br>Defense 19-2-<br>22002 | Supervise<br>Evacuation of US<br>Military Prisoners<br>19-2-32002<br>Process Captured<br>Documents and<br>Equipment 19-2-<br>31005<br><br>Coordinate<br>Intelligence<br>Collecting and<br>Reporting 19-2-<br>52001 |   |  |

**Figure 3-1. Company Mission Outline**

## CHAPTER 4

### TRAINING EXERCISES

**4-1. General.** Training exercises are used to train and practice performance of collective tasks. This MTP contains one sample FTX and five sample STXs. These exercises are designed to assist you in developing, sustaining, and evaluating unit mission proficiency. Figure 4-1 lists the exercises and their page numbers.

| TITLE                              | EXERCISE NUMBER | PAGE |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|------|
| Provide Military Police Support    | FTX 19-2-E0001  | 4-2  |
| Route Regulation and Enforcement   | STX 19-2-E0002  | 4-10 |
| Security of Designated Assets      | STX 19-2-E0003  | 4-17 |
| Internment/Resettlement Operations | STX 19-2-E0004  | 4-24 |
| MP Support to Combat Operations    | STX 19-2-E0005  | 4-31 |
| MP Support to Battlefield Movement | STX 19-2-E0006  | 4-37 |

**Figure 4-1. Example Training Exercises.**

**4-2. Field Training Exercise.** The FTX is designed to provide a training method for the unit to train the critical wartime mission. It provides a logical sequence for the performance of the tasks previously trained in the STXs.

**4-3. Situational Training Exercises.** STXs are short; scenario driven, mission-oriented tactical exercises used to train a group of closely related collective tasks. The STX provides the information for the missions that make up the critical wartime mission. The STX does the following important functions:

- a. Provides repetitive training on the missions.
- b. Allows training to "focus" on identified weaknesses.
- c. Allows the unit to practice the missions before the critical wartime mission.
- d. Saves time by providing a majority of the information needed to develop a vehicle for training.



## **CORPS, DIVISION, AND EAC MILITARY POLICE COMPANY**

### **FTX**

#### **19-2-E0001**

### **PROVIDE MILITARY POLICE SUPPORT**

1. **Objective.** The FTX trains the collective, leader, and individual tasks in the company's Provide Military Police Support Operations.
2. **Interface.** This FTX supports the higher headquarters FTX on Military Police Support Operations. The following STXs support this FTX:
  - a. STX 19-2-E0002, Route Regulation and Enforcement
  - b. STX 19-2-E0003, Security of Designated Assets
  - c. STX 19-2-E0004, Internment/Resettlement Operations
  - d. STX 19-2-E0005, MP Support to Combat Operations
  - e. STX 19-2-E0006, MP Support to Battlefield Movement

### **3. Training Enhancers.**

a. Chapter 2, Training Matrix, shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform the company mission. Training that will improve the company's ability to perform its mission are as follows:

(1) Planning, controlling, and coordinating Military Police Support Operations. Training may be conducted in garrison and local training areas by one of the following methods:

(a) Classroom instruction and discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOPs. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war-gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted).

(c) Sand table or terrain board exercise that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war-gaming and or rehearsing the exercise. (Model the terrain board or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted).

(d) CPX, command post exercise, designed to train leaders and staff in the planning and execution of tactical operations without requiring the presence and participation of the soldiers in the unit.

(e) CFX, command field exercise, with fewer troops and vehicles, but with full command and control, and combat service support elements. It involves the commander, staff, key elements of participating units, and communication between headquarters.

(f) TEWT, tactical exercise without troops, allow leaders to train on the ground, practicing land navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions. (FM 25-4, Chapter 3).

(g) COMEX, communication exercise that gives leaders an opportunity to set up and test communications equipment and to review procedures.

(h) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(2) Establishing an aggressive spirit. An aggressive spirit can be established in a unit and its leaders by engaging in the following activities:

(a) Aggressive unit sports and physical fitness program.

(b) Leader and individual confidence courses.

(c) Appropriate training films that have a positive, aggressive effect on the soldiers.

(d) Awareness of the unit's heritage.

b. This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order and ends upon the completion of area damage control activities.

**4. General Situation.** This exercise begins with the receipt of a warning order from higher headquarters. An intermediate AAR should be held after completing each major operation in the FTX. The final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your company's performance. Figure 4-2 provides a recommended sequence of events and time for each portion of the FTX.

| SEQUENCE | EVENT  | ESTIMATED TIME |
|----------|--|----------------|
| 1        | Administrative Preparations                                      | Pre FTX        |
| 2        | Receive warning order  | 1.0 hr         |
| 3        | Conduct Mission Analysis   | 1.0 hr         |
| 4        | Supervise Route Reconnaissance                                   | 2.0 hrs        |
| 5        | Supervise Route Signing and Special Circulation Control measures | 5.0 hrs.       |
| 6        | Supervise Straggler and Dislocated Civilian Control operations.  | 3.0 hrs.       |
| 7        | Collect and report intelligence                                  | *              |
| 8        | Intermediate AAR   | 0.5 hrs.       |
| 9        | Establish and Maintain Security for Critical Site                | 3.0 hrs.       |
| 10       | Supervise Security of Designated Personnel                       | 2.0 hrs.       |
| 11       | Supervise Convoy Security  | 2.0 hrs.       |
| 12       | Defend Unit Position   | *              |
| 13       | Secure CP or TOC   | *              |
| 14       | Intermediate AAR   | 0.5 hrs.       |
| 15       | Support River Crossing Operations                                | 5.0 hrs.       |
| 16       | Coordinate for Passage of Lines                                  | 0.5 hrs.       |
| 17       | Supervise Passage of Lines                                       | 2.0 hrs        |
| 18       | Cross Contaminated Area  | *              |
| 19       | Move Tactically  | *              |
| 20       | Supervise Unit Passive Air Defense                               | *              |
| 21       | Intermediate AAR   | 0.5 hrs.       |
| 22       | Supervise a Denial   | 2.0 hrs.       |
| 23       | Supervise a Delay/Withdrawal                                     | 2.0 hrs.       |

**Figure 4-2. Example Scenario for FTX 19-2-E0001**

|   |  |          |
|---|--|----------|
| 24  | Supervise screen for TCF and Handoff Battle to TCF | 3.0 hrs. |
| 25  | Intermediate AAR                                   | 0.5 hrs  |
| 26  | Construct Prisoner Holding Area                    | 2.0 hrs  |
| 27  | Collect and Process Prisoners                      | 3.0 hrs  |
| 28  | Recon Prisoners Evacuation Route                   | 1.0 hr.  |
| 29  | Supervise Prisoner Evacuation Via Road March       | 1.5 hrs. |
| 30  | Process Captured Documents and Equipment           | *        |
| 31  | Collect and Report Intelligence                    | *        |
| 32  | Supervise Area Damage Control Operations           | 3.0 hrs. |
| 33  | Final AAR  | 3.0 hrs. |
| TOTAL TIME  |  | 49 hrs.  |
| <p>NOTES:</p> <p>* These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</p> <p>° Events will be trained to standard, not time. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.</p> <p>° Additional time will be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.</p> |  |          |

**Figure 4-2. Continued Example Scenario for FTX 19-2-E0001**

**5. Special Situation.**

a. Your company is OPCON to and in direct support of a Corps, which has arrived in a new area of operations. The company receives the following FRAGO (Figure 4-3) to provide military police support operations.

b. There are substantial numbers of stragglers and dislocated civilians passing through the area of operations, which is causing congestion on the MSR. A number of critical sites in the area of operations and EPW holding area need to be established. Your company is directed to provide military police support in the area of operations.

### **FRAGMENTARY ORDER**

1. SITUATION.

a. Enemy Forces. The enemy threat consists of company-size partisan guerrilla forces or reinforced squad-size special operations teams. They are expected to attempt to disrupt MSR movement within the next 48 hours and try to sabotage critical asset sites. Enemy artillery is capable of delivering NBC munitions.

b. Friendly Forces. Following a successful attack, the corps is currently in a defensive posture while preparing for future offensive operations.

2. MISSION. (\_\_\_\_\_) Company supports MSR operations to allow rapid movement of military traffic in support of corps operations.

3. EXECUTION:

a. Concept of the Operation. (See Overlay.)

(1) Intent. Maintain freedom of movement for authorized traffic on all MSRs within the area of operations and secure critical asset sites.

(2) Fire Support. Priority of fire goes to base/base cluster defense, then MSR security.

b. (Evaluated) Company.

(1) Conduct route reconnaissance and surveillance along MSR(s).

(2) Upon approval of traffic control plan, conduct circulation control in AO.

c. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Priority of movement on the MSRs—combat units, followed by support to combat units in contact (Class III, Class V, Class VIII).

(2) MOPP Level 1 in effect.

(3) Forward all route reconnaissance overlays to this HQ NLT (date/time).

**Figure 4-3. Example FRAGO for FTX 19-2-E0001**

- (4) Submit SITREPS to this HQ daily at 0600 hrs and 1800 hrs.
- (5) PIR:
- LZ/DZ locations.
  - Any information on possible enemy locations, size, and activity.
  - Any reportable restrictions to the route.
  - Any changes along MSR which may disrupt movement of traffic.
4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
- a. Command.
- (1) The company CP will be located at (grid).
  - (2) The higher headquarters CP will be located at (grid).
  - (3) Chain of command per SOP.
- b. Signal.
- (1) SOI in effect: KTV 1600C, time period 01.
  - (2) Cipher/authentication system in effect: KTC 1400D.

**Figure 4-3. Continued Example FRAGO for FTX 19-2-E0001**

**6. Support Requirements:**

c. Minimum Trainers and OCs: the company commander who is the trainer and primary evaluator will conduct this exercise. If possible there should be at least two OCs for the unit. At least one other OC is required with the OPFOR.

d. Vehicles and Communications: All vehicles and radios organic to the company will be used. OPFOR requires various vehicles to portray friendly military and dislocated civilian traffic on the MSR.

e. OPFOR/Stragglers: These support personnel should be used in this exercise after the company demonstrates basic proficiency. The use of OPFOR acting as stragglers will add realism, gauging the company's effectiveness in exercising the proper straggler control measures, and indicating their ability to operate in a potentially stressful environment. One squad of OPFOR personnel acting as stragglers and dislocated civilians is sufficient for a company exercise. OPFOR can be mixed in with the dislocated civilians in this exercise after the unit has demonstrated basic proficiency.

f. Training Area: An area of at least 4 by 15 kilometers is needed for route reconnaissance, MSR regulation and enforcement, and circulation control operations. The terrain should offer multiple sites and approaches to key areas. Using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical or school solution does not allow evaluation of the unit's ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select sites and routes best suited for the operation.

g. Additional Equipment: This exercise requires the items listed in Figure 4-4. Experience dictates that the training will also require additional 5-gallon water cans, fuel, flashlights with BA-30 batteries, basic issue items for vehicles, and concertina wire. These items are intended as suggestions only. Local policy may not allow for provision of all items.

| AMMUNITION                          | QUANTITY               |            |           |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|------------|-----------|
| 5.56 mm, blank                      | 240 rds per M16 rifle  |            |           |
| 5.56 mm, blank                      | 240 rds per M4 carbine |            |           |
| 5.56 mm, blank linked               | 400 rds per M249 SAW   |            |           |
| Simulator, projectile, ground burst | 20 each exercise       |            |           |
| Simulator, hand grenade             | 20 each exercise       |            |           |
| OTHER ITEMS                         | QUANTITY               |            |           |
| Batteries, BA 200 (6 volt)          | 48 each                |            |           |
| Batteries, BA 3090 (9 volt)         | 560 each               |            |           |
| MILES EQUIPMENT                     | Company                | Evaluators | OPFOR     |
| M16/M4 system                       | 182                    |            | 1 platoon |
| Controller Guns                     |                        | 2          |           |
| Small arms alignment fixture        |                        | 1          |           |

**Figure 4-4. Example Suggested Support Requirements for FTX 19-2-E0001.**

h. Commanders should consult local regulations and range control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.

**7. T&EO Sequence:** Figure 4-5 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 used to evaluate this FTX.

| TASK   | NUMBERS    | PAGE  |
|--|------------|-------|
| Supervise Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance    | 19-2-11002 | 5-13  |
| Supervise Route Regulation and Enforcement         | 19-2-12002 | 5-92  |
| Supervise Straggler Control Operations             | 19-2-13002 | 5-98  |
| Supervise Dislocated Civilian Control Operations   | 19-2-13001 | 5-96  |
| Coordinate Intelligence Collecting and Reporting   | 19-2-52001 | 5-11  |
| Supervise Security of Critical Sites               | 19-2-22004 | 5-62  |
| Supervise Security of Designated Persons           | 19-2-21001 | 5-58  |
| Supervise Convoy Security                          | 19-2-20004 | 5-50  |
| Secure and Defend Unit Position                    | 07-2-C314  | 5-16  |
| Supervise Security of Command Post                 | 19-2-22005 | 5-117 |
| Supervise MP Response to Base/Base Cluster Defense | 19-2-22002 | 5-60  |
| Coordinate MP Support to River Crossing            | 19-2-11001 | 5-37  |

**Figure 4-2. Example T&EOs for FTX 19-2-E0001.**

|  |            |       |
|--|------------|-------|
| Coordinate MP Support to Passage of Lines                                    | 19-2-12004 | 5-40  |
| Supervise Screening Operations   | 19-2-22012 | 5-33  |
| Supervise Movement to Contact  | 19-2-22009 | 5-27  |
| Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area   | 3-3-C226   | 5-86  |
| Use Passive Air Defense Measures   | 44-2-C307  | 5-100 |
| Direct a Delay   | 19-2-20007 | 5-21  |
| Supervise a Battle Handoff to a Tactical Combat force (TCF)                  | 19-2-22008 | 5-28  |
| Supervise EPW Holding Area   | 19-2-31003 | 5-120 |
| Supervise Field Detention Facility (FDF) for US Military Prisoners (EAC/EAD) | 19-2-32003 | 5-130 |
| Supervise EPW/CI Collecting Processing and Evacuating                        | 19-2-31004 | 5-123 |
| Supervise Evacuation of US Military Prisoners                                | 19-4-32002 | 5-128 |
| Process Captured Documents and Equipment                                     | 19-2-31005 | 5-126 |
| Supervise Area Damage Control Operations                                     | 19-2-20001 | 5-113 |

**Figure 4-5. Continued Example T&EOs for FTX 19-2-E0001**



## CORPS, DIVISION, AND EAC MILITARY POLICE COMPANY

### STX

#### 19-2-E0002

### ROUTE REGULATION AND ENFORCEMENT

1. **Objective.** This STX trains the collective, leader, and individual tasks for the company's operation of route regulation and enforcement.

2. **Interface.** This STX supports the company FTX. This STX is supported by STX 19-3-E0001 in MTP 19-313-10.

3. **Training.**

a. Guidance. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during the STX. The trainer should also determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The Individual Task to Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 should be used as a source for these individual tasks. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 95B and the soldier's common task manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common task test and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks that support the company's METL. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad, platoon and company collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that could support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the mission outline in Chapter 3 and Figure 4-5.

(3) Leader Training. Leader training should be on the leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or by one or all of the following methods. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to the methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOPs. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war-gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercise that permits simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war-gaming and or rehearsing the exercise. (Model the terrain board or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(d) Tactical exercises without troops (TWET) allow leaders to train on the ground, practicing land navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions. (FM 25-4, Chapter 3.)

(e) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(f) Training extension courses present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard using audiovisual equipment. (DA Pam 350-100.)

b. Training Tips. Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX are as follows:

(1) Know the requirements for circulation control. (FMs 19-1 and 19-4.)

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

(4) This STX may be conducted using the following options:

(a) The exercise may be conducted with ammunition, without ammunition, or with live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(b) The exercise may be conducted with or without MILES. MILES provides better feedback and should be used, if available.

(c) The exercise may be conducted under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC.

(5) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). The STX is executed under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase. Full operational security and camouflage, realistic time frames and distances, challenging terrain, and aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training, drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this exercise are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities. (See Chapter 6.)

(e) At least one evaluator should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary. (See Chapter 6.)

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy. This assists soldiers in understanding threat tactics, doctrine, and weapon systems. (See Chapter 6.)

(g) OPFOR should be trained prior to the exercise to ensure synchronization of events.

c. Training Enhancers. This STX requires the company to perform route regulation and enforcement.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in the STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without NVDs.

(2) This STX may be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increases.

(3) This STX should also be conducted in a MOUT environment.

(4) The route regulation enforcement mission of this FTX can be expanded or altered as proficiency increases. The following T&EOs may be added as time becomes available or the training emphasis changes:

19-2-40001, Conduct Law and Order Operations.

19-2-41001, Coordinate Law Enforcement Patrol Operations.

19-2-41002, Provide MP Investigative Support.

**4. General Situation.** This exercise begins with the receipt of a FRAGO by the company. An AAR should be held after completing the MSR regulation and enforcement control and after straggler and dislocated civilian control operations. The final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your company's performance. Figure 4-2 provides a recommended sequence of events and time for each portion of the STX.

| SEQUENCE  | EVENT  | ESTIMATED TIME |
|---|--|----------------|
| 1   | Receive mission, begin troop-leading procedures.               | 2.0 hr.        |
| 2   | Supervise route reconnaissance                                 | 3.0 hrs.       |
| 3   | Supervise route signing and route regulation enforcement.      | 3.0 hrs.       |
| 4   | Intermediate AAR   | 0.5 hrs.       |
| 5   | Planning step  | 0.5 hrs        |
| 6   | Supervise straggler and dislocated civilian control operations | 2.0 hrs.       |
| 7   | Final AAR  | 1.0 hr.        |
| 8   | Collect and report intelligence                                | *              |
| <b>TOTAL TIME</b>   |  | <b>12 hrs.</b> |
| <p><b>NOTES:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</li> <li>° Events will be trained to standard, not time. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.</li> <li>° Additional time will be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.</li> </ul> |  |                |

**Figure 4-2. Example Scenario for STX 19-2-E0002.**

**5. Special Situation.**

- a. The company receives the following FRAGO (Figure 4-3) to conduct support to MMS operations.
- b. There are substantial numbers of stragglers and dislocated civilians passing through the area of operations, which is causing congestion on the MSRs. Your company is directed to control the stragglers and dislocated civilians in the area.

### **FRAGMENTARY ORDER**

1. SITUATION.

a. Enemy Forces. The enemy threat consists of company-size partisan guerrilla forces or reinforced squad-size special operations teams. They are expected to attempt to disrupt MSR movement within the next 48 hours. Enemy artillery is capable of delivering NBC munitions into the corps rear area

b. Friendly Forces. Following a successful attack, the division is currently in a defensive posture while preparing for future offensive operations.

2. MISSION. (\_\_\_\_\_) Company supports MSR operations to allow rapid movement of military traffic in support of brigade operations.

3. EXECUTION:

a. Concept of the Operation. (See Overlay.)

(1) Intent. The purpose of the operation is to ensure freedom of movement for all authorized traffic on all MSRs within the AO. We will do so by enforcing MSR regulations and placement of route signs. Endstate will be defined as unimpeded movement of military traffic along MSRs to include clearance of MSRs from stragglers and refugees..

(2) Fire Support. Priority of fire goes to base/base cluster defense, then MSR security.

b. (Evaluated) Company.

(1) Supervise route reconnaissance and surveillance along MSR(s).

(2) Upon approval of traffic control plan, conduct circulation control in AO.

c. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Priority of movement on the MSRs--combat units, followed by support to combat units in contact (Class III, Class V, Class VIII).

(2) MOPP Level 1 in effect.

(3) Forward all route reconnaissance overlays to this HQ NLT (date/time).

**Figure 4-3. Example FRAGO for STX 19-2-E0002.**

- (4) Submit SITREPS to this HQ daily at 0600 hrs and 1800 hrs.
- (5) PIR:
- LZ/DZ locations.
  - Any information on possible enemy locations, size, and activity.
  - Any reportable restrictions to the route.
  - Any changes along MSR which may disrupt movement of traffic.
4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
- a. Command.
- (1) The company CP will be located at (grid).
  - (2) The higher headquarters CP will be located at (grid).
  - (3) Chain of command per SOP.
- b. Signal.
- (1) SOI in effect: KTV 1600C, time period 01.
  - (2) Cipher/authentication system in effect: KTC 1400D.

**Figure 4-3. Continued Example FRAGO for STX 19-2-E0002.**

**6. Support Requirements:**

a. Minimum Trainers and OCs: This exercise will be conducted by the company commander who is the trainer and primary evaluator. If possible there should be at least two OCs for the unit. At least one other OC is required with the OPFOR.

b. Vehicles and Communications: All vehicles and radios organic to the company will be used. OPFOR requires various vehicles to portray friendly military and dislocated civilian traffic on the MSR.

c. OPFOR/Stragglers/Dislocated Civilians: These support personnel should be used in this exercise after the company demonstrates basic proficiency. The use of OPFOR acting as stragglers/dislocated civilians will add realism, gauging the company's effectiveness in exercising the proper straggler control measures, and indicating their ability to operate in a potentially stressful environment. One squad of OPFOR personnel acting as stragglers and dislocated civilians is sufficient for a company exercise.

d. Training Area: An area of at least 4 by 15 kilometers is needed for route reconnaissance, MSR regulation and enforcement, and circulation control operations. The terrain should offer multiple sites and approaches to key areas. Using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical or school solution does not allow evaluation of the unit's ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select sites and routes best suited for the operation.

e. Additional Equipment: This exercise requires the items listed in Figure 4-4. Experience dictates that the training will also require additional 5-gallon water cans, fuel, flashlights with BA-30 batteries,

basic issue items for vehicles, and concertina wire. These items are intended as suggestions only. Local policy may not allow for provision of all items.

| AMMUNITION                          | QUANTITY               |            |           |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|------------|-----------|
| 5.56 mm, blank                      | 240 rds per M16 rifle  |            |           |
| 5.56 mm, blank                      | 240 rds per M4 carbine |            |           |
| 5.56 mm, blank linked               | 400 rds per M249 SAW   |            |           |
| Simulator, projectile, ground burst | 20 each exercise       |            |           |
| Simulator, hand grenade             | 20 each exercise       |            |           |
| OTHER ITEMS                         | QUANTITY               |            |           |
| Batteries, BA 200 (6 volt)          | 48 each                |            |           |
| Batteries, BA 3090 (9 volt)         | 560 each               |            |           |
| MILES EQUIPMENT                     | Company                | Evaluators | OPFOR     |
| M16/M4 system                       | 182                    |            | 1 platoon |
| Controller Guns                     |                        | 2          |           |
| Small arms alignment fixture        |                        | 1          |           |

**Figure 4-4. Suggested Support Requirements for STX 19-2-E0002.**

f. Commanders should consult local regulations and range control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.

**7. T&EO Sequence:** Figure 4-5 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 used to evaluate this STX.

| TASK   | NUMBERS    | PAGE |
|--|------------|------|
| Supervise Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance  | 19-2-11002 | 5-13 |
| Supervise Route Regulation and Enforcement       | 19-2-12002 | 5-92 |
| Supervise Straggler Control Operations           | 19-2-13002 | 5-98 |
| Supervise Dislocated Civilian Control Operations | 19-2-13001 | 5-96 |
| Coordinate Intelligence Collecting and Reporting | 19-2-52001 | 5-11 |

**Figure 4-5. Example T&EOs for STX 19-2-E0002.**

**CORPS, DIVISION, AND EAC MILITARY POLICE COMPANY****STX****19-2-E0003****SECURITY OF DESIGNATED ASSETS**

**1. Objective.** This STX trains the collective, leader, and individual tasks for the company's operation of providing security to designated assets.

**2. Interface.** This STX supports the company FTX . This STX is supported by STX 19-3-E0002 in MTP 19-313-10.

**3. Training.**

a. Guidance. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during the STX. The trainer should also determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The Individual Task to Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 should be used as a source for these individual tasks. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 95B and the soldier's common tasks manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common tasks test and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks that support the company's METL. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad, platoon and company collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that could support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the mission outline in Chapter 3 and Figure 4-9.

(3) Leader Training. Leader training should be on the leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or by one or all of the following methods. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to the methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOPs. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war-gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war-gaming and or rehearsing the exercise. (Model the terrain board or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)



(d) Tactical exercises without troops allow leaders to train on the ground, practicing land navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions. (FM 25-4, Chapter 3.)

(e) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(f) Training extension courses present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard using audiovisual equipment. (DA Pam 350-100.)

b. Training Tips. Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX are as follows:

(1) Know the requirements for area security. (FMs 19-1 and 19-4.)

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

(4) This STX may be conducted using the following options:

(a) The exercise may be conducted with ammunition, without ammunition, or with live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(b) The exercise may be conducted with or without MILES. MILES provides better feedback and should be used, if available.

(c) The exercise may be conducted under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC.

(5) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks", constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). The STX is executed under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase. Full operational security, realistic time frames, challenging terrain, aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training, drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this exercise are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities. (See Chapter 6.)

(e) At least one evaluator should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary. (See Chapter 6.)

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy. This assists soldiers in understanding threat tactics, doctrine, and weapon systems. (See Chapter 6.)

(g) OPFOR should be trained prior to the exercise to ensure synchronization of events.

c. Training Enhancers. This STX requires the company to perform security operations.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in the STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without NVDs.

(2) This STX may be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increases.

(3) This STX should also be conducted in a MOU environment.

(4) The security mission of this STX can be expanded or altered as proficiency increases. The following T&EOs may be added as time becomes available or the training emphasis changes:

19-2-20008, Supervise Security of a Conventional Ammunition Supply Point.

19-2-20010, Supervise Pipeline Security.

19-2-20011, Coordinate Railway Security.

19-2-20009, Conduct Security for a Deep Water Port.

**4. General Situation.** This exercise begins with the receipt of a FRAGO by the company. The final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your company's performance. Figure 4-6 provides a recommended sequence of events and time for each portion of the STX.

| SEQUENCE  | EVENT  | ESTIMATED TIME |
|---|--|----------------|
| 1   | Receive mission, begin troop-leading procedures.     | 1.0 hr.        |
| 2   | Establish and maintain security for a critical site. | 2.0 hrs.       |
| 3   | Intermediate AAR                                     | .5 hrs.        |
| 4   | Conduct security of a designated person              | 2.0 hrs.       |
| 5   | Conduct convoy security                              | 2.0 hrs.       |
| 6   | Final AAR  | 1.0 hr.        |
| 7   | Defend unit position                                 | *              |
| 8   | Secure CP or TOC                                     | *              |
| TOTAL TIME  |  | 8.5 hrs.       |
| <p>NOTES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</li> <li>° Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.</li> <li>° Additional time will be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.</li> </ul> |  |                |

**Figure 4-6. Example Scenario for STX 19-2-E0003.**

### **5. Special Situation.**

- a. The commander has designated a facility within the area of operations as critical. The company receives the following FRAGO, directing it to provide security for the facility (Figure 4-7).
- b. A senior official will be entering the AO for a tour, to include a visit to the facility being secured by the company. The company is directed to provide security for the person while he or she is in the area of operations.
- c. A convoy of critical supplies will be leaving the facility. The company is directed to provide security for the convoy from the facility to the point where the convoy will be assumed by another MP escort element.

**FRAGMENTARY ORDER****1. SITUATION.**

a. **Enemy Forces.** The enemy threat consists of company-size guerrilla forces or reinforced squad-size special operations teams. They are expected to sabotage and disrupt critical logistical and C<sup>2</sup> facilities within the next 48 hours. The enemy is capable of inserting battalion-sized airborne or air assault teams into the AO. Enemy artillery is capable of delivering NBC munitions within the corps rear area.

b. **Friendly Forces.** The corps is currently preparing to launch a major defensive operation. Combat units and critical supplies will be moving through the AO toward assembly areas.

**2. MISSION.** (\_\_\_\_\_) Company provides security for the critical facility, for designated convoys, and for designated persons. The company allows the undisrupted/buildup of troops and supplies in support of corps operations.

**3. EXECUTION:**

a. **Concept of the Operation.** (See Overlay.)

(1) **Intent.** The purpose of the mission is to prevent critical operations and facilities from being delayed, disrupted, or destroyed by enemy activity. The method will be through detailed planning and implementation of security measures to ensure corps operations are not hindered.

(2) **Fire Support.** Priority of fire goes to base/base cluster defense, then area security.

b. **(Evaluated) Company.**

(1) Establish and maintain security of the designated facility.

(2) Provide security escort for convoys and persons within the AO.

**Figure 4-7. Example FRAGO for STX 19-2-E0003.**

- c. Coordinating Instructions.
  - (1) MOPP Level 1 in effect.
  - (2) PIR:
    - Enemy sightings and locations.
    - Type and number of enemy weapons.
    - Identification of enemy units.
- 4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change.
- 5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
  - a. Command.
    - (1) The company CP will be located at (grid).
    - (2) The higher headquarters CP will be located at (grid).
    - (3) Chain of command per SOP.
  - b. Signal.
    - (1) SOI in effect: KTV 1600C, time period 01.
    - (2) Cipher/authentication system in effect: KTC 1400D.

**Figure 4-7. Continued Example FRAGO for STX 19-2-E0003.**

**6. Support Requirements:**

a. Minimum Trainers and OCs: This exercise will be conducted by the company commander who is the trainer and primary evaluator. If possible there should be at least two OCs for the unit. At least one other OC is required with the OPFOR.

b. Vehicles and Communications: All vehicles and radios organic to the company will be used.

c. OPFOR: The OPFOR ground force should be at least one reinforced squad or platoon.

d. Training Area: An area of at least 4 by 15 kilometers is needed. The terrain should offer multiple sites and approaches to key areas. Using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical or school solution does not allow evaluation of the unit's ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select sites and routes best suited for the operation. A structure or collection of structures to be used as the critical facility is preferred for training realism but may be simulated if necessary.

e. Additional Equipment: This exercise requires the items listed in Figure 4-8. Experience dictates that the training will also require additional 5-gallon water cans, fuel, flashlights with BA-30 batteries, basic issue items for vehicles, and concertina wire. These items are intended as suggestions only. Local policy may not allow for provision of all items.

| AMMUNITION                          | QUANTITY               |            |           |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|------------|-----------|
| 5.56 mm, blank                      | 240 rds per M16 rifle  |            |           |
| 5.56 mm, blank                      | 240 rds per M4 carbine |            |           |
| 5.56 mm, blank linked               | 400 rds per M249 SAW   |            |           |
| Simulator, projectile, ground burst | 20 each exercise       |            |           |
| Simulator, hand grenade             | 20 each exercise       |            |           |
| OTHER ITEMS                         | QUANTITY               |            |           |
| Batteries, BA 200 (6 volt)          | 48 each                |            |           |
| Batteries, BA 3090 (9 volt)         | 560 each               |            |           |
| MILES EQUIPMENT                     | Company                | Evaluators | OPFOR     |
| M16/M4 system                       | 182                    |            | 1 platoon |
| Controller Guns                     |                        | 2          |           |
| Small arms alignment fixture        |                        | 1          |           |

**Figure 4-8. Example Suggested Support Requirements for STX 19-2-E0003.**

f. Commanders should consult local regulations and range control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.

**7. T&EO Sequence:** Figure 4-9 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 used to evaluate this STX.

| TASK   | NUMBERS    | PAGE  |
|--|------------|-------|
| Supervise Security of a Critical Site            | 19-2-22004 | 5-62  |
| Supervise Security for Designated Persons        | 19-2-21001 | 5-58  |
| Supervise Convoy Security                        | 19-2-20004 | 5-50  |
| Supervise Security of a Command Post             | 19-2-22005 | 5-117 |
| Supervise Base/Base Cluster Coordination/Defense | 19-2-22002 | 5-60  |

**Figure 4-9. Example T&EOs for STX 19-2-E0003.**

## CORPS, DIVISION AND EAC MILITARY POLICE COMPANY

### STX

#### 19-2-E0004

### INTERNMENT/RESETTLEMENT OPERATIONS

1. **Objective.** This STX trains the collective, leader, and individual tasks for the company's operation of internment and resettlement.

2. **Interface.** This STX supports the company FTX . This STX is supported by STX 19-3-E0003 in MTP 19-313-10.

3. **Training.**

a. Guidance. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during the STX. The trainer should also determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The Individual Task to Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 should be used as a source for these individual tasks. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 95B and the soldier's common tasks manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common tasks test and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks that support the company's METL. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad, platoon and company collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that could support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the mission outline in Chapter 3 and Figure 4-13.

(3) Leader Training. Leader training should be on the leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or by one or all of the following methods. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to the methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOPs. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war-gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war-gaming and or rehearsing the exercise. (Model the terrain board or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(d) Tactical exercises without troops allow leaders to train on the ground, practicing land navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions. (FM 25-4, Chapter 3.)

(e) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(f) Training extension courses present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard using audiovisual equipment. (DA Pam 350-100.)

b. Training Tips. Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX are as follows:

(1) Know the requirements for internment/resettlement operations. (FMs 19-1 and 19-4.)

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

(4) This STX may be conducted using the following options:

(a) The exercise may be conducted with ammunition, without ammunition, or with live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(b) The exercise may be conducted with or without MILES. MILES provides better feedback and should be used, if available.

(c) The exercise may be conducted under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC.

(5) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). The STX is executed under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase. Full operational security, realistic time frames, challenging terrain, aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training, drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this exercise are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities. (See Chapter 6.)



(e) At least one evaluator should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary. (See Chapter 6.)

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy. This assists soldiers in understanding threat tactics, doctrine, and weapon systems. (See Chapter 6.)

(g) OPFOR should be trained prior to the exercise to ensure synchronization of events.

c. Training Enhancers. This STX requires the company to perform internment/resettlement operations.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in the STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without NVDs.

(2) This STX may be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increases.

(3) This STX should also be conducted in a MOUT environment.

**4. General Situation.** This exercise begins with the receipt of a FRAGO by the company and ends after prisoners have been evacuated from the AO. The final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your company's performance. Figure 4-10 provides a recommended sequence of events and time for each portion of the STX.

| SEQUENCE  | EVENT   | ESTIMATED TIME |
|---|---|----------------|
| 1   | Receive mission, begin troop-leading procedures | 1.0 hr.        |
| 2   | Construct prisoner collecting point             | 2.0 hrs.       |
| 3   | Process prisoners                               | 3.0 hrs.       |
| 4   | Intermediate AAR                                | .5 hrs.        |
| 5   | Reconnoiter the prisoner evacuation route       | 1.0 hrs.       |
| 6   | Conduct prisoner evacuation via road march      | 1.5 hr.        |
| 7   | Final AAR                                       | 1.0 hr.        |
| 8   | Process captured documents and equipment        | *              |
| 9   | Collect and report intelligence                 | *              |
| TOTAL TIME  |   | 10.0 hrs.      |
| <p>NOTES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* These tasks are integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</li> <li>° Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.</li> <li>° Additional time will be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.</li> </ul> |   |                |

**Figure 4-10. Example Scenario for STX 19-2-E0004.**

**5. Special Situation.**

a. The company has captured enemy soldiers and interned civilians in its AO. The company receives the following FRAGO, (Figure 4-11) to conduct internment/resettlement operations.

b. Concurrently with the I/R mission, the company receives U.S. military prisoners to be kept in custody and evacuated for trial.

c. The company captures enemy documents and equipment while conducting operations.

## FRAGMENTARY ORDER

### 1. SITUATION.

a. Enemy Forces. The enemy force is currently withdrawing after suffering heavy losses. Their current strength is estimated to be at 50 percent. Intelligence estimates indicate that the enemy is not prepared to counterattack at this time. Their morale is low and many soldiers are beginning to surrender to friendly forces.

b. Friendly Forces. Following a successful attack, the corps continues its pursuit of the enemy force.

2. MISSION. (\_\_\_\_\_) Company conducts internment operations. Commencing NLT (date/time) for the purpose of securing EPW/CI and freeing combat units to continue their pursuit.

### 3. EXECUTION:

a. Concept of the Operation. (See Overlay.)

(1) Intent. The purpose of this operation is to collect, process, and evacuate EPW/CI. We will use the STRESS techniques during this operation. Endstate will be proper collecting, processing and evacuating of EPW/CI without injury to friendly or enemy forces.

(2) Fire Support. Priority of fire goes to base/base cluster defense.

b. (Evaluated) Company

(1) Establish and operate collection point in the vicinity (grid) commencing (date/time).

(2) Coordinate transportation to and from maneuver units.

(3) Coordinate for evacuation.

c. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) All EPW/CI will be handled IAW Geneva Conventions.

(2) MOPP Level 1 in effect.

**Figure 4-11. Example FRAGO for STX 19-2-E0004**

- (3) All coordination for transportation will go through HQ.
- (4) PIR:
- Number and type of weapons confiscated.
  - Unit designation of captured soldiers.
4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
- a. Command.
- (1) The company CP will be located at (grid).
  - (2) The higher headquarters CP will be located at (grid).
  - (3) Chain of command per SOP.
- b. Signal.
- (1) SOI in effect: KTV 1600C, time period 01.
  - (2) Cipher/authentication system in effect: KTC 1400D.

**Figure 4-11. Continued Example FRAGO for STX 19-2-E0004**

**6. Support Requirements:**

a. Minimum Trainers and OCs: This exercise will be conducted by the company commander who is the trainer and primary evaluator. If possible there should be at least two OCs for the unit. At least one other OC is required with the OPFOR.

b. Vehicles and Communications: All vehicles and radios organic to the company will be used.

c. OPFOR: The OPFOR should be at least a reinforced squad or platoon, capable of disrupting company internment/resettlement operations. OPFOR will also portray EPW, CI, and U.S. military prisoners.

d. Training Area: An area of at least 4 by 15 kilometers is needed for prisoner collection and evacuation operations. The terrain should offer multiple sites and approaches to key areas. Using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical or school solution does not allow evaluation of the unit's ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select sites and routes best suited for the operation.

e. Additional Equipment: This exercise requires the items listed in Figure 4-12. Experience dictates that the training will also require additional 5-gallon water cans, fuel, flashlights with BA-30 batteries, basic issue items for vehicles, and concertina wire. These items are intended as suggestions only. Local policy may not allow for provision of all items.

| AMMUNITION                          | QUANTITY               |            |           |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|------------|-----------|
| 5.56 mm, blank                      | 240 rds per M16 rifle  |            |           |
| 5.56 mm, blank                      | 240 rds per M4 carbine |            |           |
| 5.56 mm, blank linked               | 400 rds per M249 SAW   |            |           |
| Simulator, projectile, ground burst | 20 each exercise       |            |           |
| Simulator, hand grenade             | 20 each exercise       |            |           |
| OTHER ITEMS                         | QUANTITY               |            |           |
| Batteries, BA 200 (6 volt)          | 48 each                |            |           |
| Batteries, BA 3090 (9 volt)         | 560 each               |            |           |
| MILES EQUIPMENT                     | Company                | Evaluators | OPFOR     |
| M16/M4 system                       | 182                    |            | 1 platoon |
| Controller Guns                     |                        | 2          |           |
| Small arms alignment fixture        |                        | 1          |           |

**Figure 4-12. Example Suggested Support Requirements for STX 19-2-E0004.**

f. Commanders should consult local regulations and range control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.

**7. T&EO Sequence:** Figure 4-13 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 used to evaluate this STX.

| TASK   | NUMBERS    | PAGE  |
|--|------------|-------|
| Supervise Field Detention Facility (FDF) for US Military Prisoners (EAC/EAD) | 19-2-32003 | 5-130 |
| Supervise EPW Holding Area   | 19-2-31003 | 5-120 |
| Supervise Dislocated Civilian Control Operations                             | 19-2-13001 | 5-96  |
| Supervise Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance                              | 19-2-11002 | 5-13  |
| Supervise Evacuation of US Military Prisoners                                | 19-2-32002 | 5-128 |
| Process Captured Documents and Evacuating                                    | 19-2-31005 | 5-126 |
| Coordinate Intelligence Collecting and Reporting                             | 19-2-52001 | 5-11  |

**Figure 4-13. Example T&EOs for STX 19-2-E0004.**

**CORPS, DIVISION AND EAC MILITARY POLICE COMPANY****STX****19-2-E0005****MP SUPPORT TO COMBAT OPERATIONS**

1. **Objective.** This STX trains the collective, leader, and individual tasks in the company's operation of MP support to combat operations.

2. **Interface.** This STX supports the company FTX. This STX is supported by STX 19-3-E0004 in MTP 19-313-10.

3. **Training.**

a. Guidance. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during the STX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The Individual Task to Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 should be used as a source for these individual tasks. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 95B and the soldier's common tasks manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common tasks test and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks that support the company's METL. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad, platoon and company collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that could support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the mission outline in Chapter 3 and Figure 4-17.

(3) Leader Training. Leader training should be on the leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or by one or all of the following methods. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to the methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOPs. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war-gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war-gaming and or rehearsing the exercise. (Model the terrain board or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(d) Tactical exercises without troops allow leaders to train on the ground, practicing land navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions. (FM 25-4, Chapter 3.)

(e) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(f) Training extension courses present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard using audiovisual equipment. (DA Pam 350-100.)

b. Training Tips. Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX are as follows:

(1) Know the requirements for a battle handover, delay/withdrawal, screen, and denial. (FMs 19-1 and 19-4.)

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that you do not make time-consuming mistakes.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

(4) This STX may be conducted using several options:

(a) The exercise may be conducted with ammunition, without ammunition, or with live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(b) The exercise may be conducted with or without MILES. MILES provides better feedback and should be used, if available.

(c) The exercise can be conducted under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC.

(5) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). The STX is executed under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase. Full operational security, realistic time frames, challenging terrain, aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training, drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this exercise are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities. (See Chapter 6.)

(e) At least one evaluator should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage.

If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary. (See Chapter 6.)

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy. This assists soldiers in understanding threat tactics, doctrine, and weapon systems. (See Chapter 6.)

(g) OPFOR should be trained prior to the exercise to ensure synchronization of events.

c. Training Enhancers. This STX requires the company to perform a battle handover, delay/withdrawal, denial, and screen.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in the STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without NVDs.

(2) This STX may be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increases.

(3) This STX should also be conducted in a MOU environment.

**4. General Situation.** This exercise begins with the receipt of a FRAGO by the company and ends when battle handover to TCF is completed. The final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your company's performance. Figure 4-14 provides a recommended sequence of events and time for each portion of the STX.

| SEQUENCE   | EVENT   | ESTIMATED TIME  |
|--|---|-----------------|
| 1  | Receive mission, begin troop-leading procedures.        | 1.0 hr.         |
| 2  | Conduct a delay.  | 1.5 hrs.        |
| 3  | Intermediate AAR  | .5 hrs.         |
| 4  | Conduct screen for TCF and handover the battle to a TCF | 3.0 hrs.        |
| 5  | Final AAR   | .5 hrs.         |
| <b>TOTAL TIME</b>  |   | <b>8.0 hrs.</b> |
| <p>NOTES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>° Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.</li> <li>° Additional time will be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.</li> </ul> |   |                 |

**Figure 4-14. Example Scenario for STX 19-2-E0005.**



**5. Special Situation.**

The company receives the following FRAGO (Figure 4-15) to provide support for combat operations.

**FRAGMENTARY ORDER**

**1. SITUATION.**

- a. Enemy Forces. Level III threat has penetrated into the corps rear area. They are expected to attempt to disrupt rear operations.
- b. Friendly Forces. The corps is currently in a defensive posture while preparing for future offensive operations.

**2. MISSION.** (\_\_\_\_\_) Company provides MP support to rear operations.

**3. EXECUTION:**

a. Concept of the Operation. (See Overlay.)

(1) Intent. The purpose of the mission is to conduct operations in the corps rear area to disrupt enemy activity. We will conduct delaying operations to a battle handover line where we will transition with the TCF. Endstate is defined as a smooth handoff with the TCF to ensure unimpeded operations within the corps rear area.

(2) Fire Support.

b. (Evaluated) Company.

(1) Provide early and accurate warning when screening.

(2) Provide reaction time and maneuver space when screening.

(3) Establish initial and subsequent screen lines.

c. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Priority of movement on the MSRs--combat units, followed by support to combat units in contact (Class III, Class V, Class VIII).

(2) MOPP Level 1 in effect.

**Figure 4-15. Example FRAGO for STX 19-2-E0005.**

- (3) PIR:
- Potential enemy LZs/DZs.
  - Likely avenues of approach.
4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
- a. Command.
- (1) The company CP will be located at (grid).
  - (2) The higher headquarters CP will be located at (grid).
  - (3) Chain of command per SOP.
- b. Signal.
- (1) SOI in effect: KTV 1600C, time period 01.
  - (2) Cipher/authentication system in effect: KTC 1400D.

**Figure 4-15. Continued Example FRAGO for STX 19-2-E0005****6. Support Requirements:**

a. Minimum Trainers and OCs: This exercise will be conducted by the company commander who is the trainer and primary evaluator. If possible there should be at least two OCs for the unit. At least one other OC is required with the OPFOR.

b. Vehicles and Communications: All vehicles and radios organic to the company will be used.

c. OPFOR: The support personnel should be used in this exercise after the company demonstrates basic proficiency. One platoon of OPFOR personnel is sufficient for a company exercise.

d. Training Area: An area of at least 3 by 3 kilometers is needed for adequate training of this exercise. The selected area should include all five basic military terrain features as well as buildings, roadways, and streams. Vegetation and terrain should allow for cover and concealment of patrols and OPFOR. Using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical or school solution does not allow evaluation of the unit's ability to conduct a terrain analysis and select sites and routes best suited for the operation.

e. Additional Equipment: This exercise requires the items listed in Figure 4-16. Experience

dictates that the training will also require additional 5-gallon water cans, fuel, flashlights with BA-30 batteries, basic issue items for vehicles, and concertina wire. These items are intended as suggestions only. Local policy may not allow for provision of all items.

| AMMUNITION                          | QUANTITY               |            |           |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|------------|-----------|
| 5.56 mm, blank                      | 240 rds per M16 rifle  |            |           |
| 5.56 mm, blank                      | 240 rds per M4 carbine |            |           |
| 5.56 mm, blank linked               | 400 rds per M249 SAW   |            |           |
| Simulator, projectile, ground burst | 20 each exercise       |            |           |
| Simulator, hand grenade             | 20 each exercise       |            |           |
| OTHER ITEMS                         | QUANTITY               |            |           |
| Batteries, BA 200 (6 volt)          | 48 each                |            |           |
| Batteries, BA 3090 (9 volt)         | 560 each               |            |           |
| MILES EQUIPMENT                     | Company                | Evaluators | OPFOR     |
| M16/M4 system                       | 182                    |            | 1 Platoon |
| Controller Guns                     |                        | 2          |           |
| Small arms alignment fixture        |                        | 1          |           |

**Figure 4-16. Example Suggested Support Requirements for STX 19-2-E0005.**

f. Commanders should consult local regulations and range control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.

**7. T&EO Sequence:** Figure 4-17 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 used to evaluate this STX.

| TASK  | NUMBERS    | PAGE |
|---|------------|------|
| Direct a Delay  | 19-2-20007 | 5-21 |
| Supervise Screening   | 19-2-22012 | 5-33 |
| Supervise a Battle Handoff to a Tactical Combat Force (TCF) | 19-2-22008 | 5-25 |

**Figure 4-17. T&EOs for STX 19-2-E0005.**

**CORPS, DIVISION AND EAC MILITARY POLICE COMPANY****STX****19-2-E0006****MP SUPPORT TO BATTLEFIELD MOVEMENT**

**1. Objective.** This STX trains the collective, leader, and individual tasks for the company's operation of maneuver and mobility support.

**2. Interface.** This STX supports the company FTX. This STX is supported by STX 19-3-E0005 in MTP 19-313-10.

**3. Training.**

a. Guidance. The trainer should review the individual, leader, and collective tasks that are performed during the STX. Determine which tasks may require initial or refresher training.

(1) Individual training. Individual training should be on the soldier's manual tasks required to support this STX. The Individual Task to Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 should be used as a source for these individual tasks. Individual training is based on the tasks, conditions, and standards in the 95B and the soldier's common tasks manuals. Training should be hands-on and performance-oriented. During training, leaders assess soldier proficiency by evaluating task performance against the soldier's manual standards and provide feedback to the soldiers. The individual training and evaluation program includes things such as common tasks test and commander's evaluations.

(2) Collective training. Collective training should be on the collective tasks that support the company's METL. Battle drills and STXs are key tools for squad, platoon and company collective training. As with individual tasks, drills should be trained to standard with feedback provided, as required. Collective tasks that could support this STX and mission, as well as other missions, are in the mission outline in Chapter 3 and Figure 4-21.

(3) Leader Training. Leader training should be on the leader tasks required for the exercise as well as the individual tasks. Leader tasks are trained in the same manner as stated in paragraph 3a or by one or all of the following methods. When materials and facilities are not available, innovation is the answer. Do not limit training to the methods listed.

(a) Classroom discussion on how to plan the exercise and how to implement unit SOPs. (See FM 25-4, Chapter 2.)

(b) Map reconnaissance that assists in terrain analysis and war-gaming. (Use a map of the area where the STX is to be conducted.)

(c) Terrain board or sand table exercises that permit simulations or miniatures to be used to gain three-dimensional perspectives in war-gaming and or rehearsing the exercise. (Model the terrain board or sand table to match the terrain where the exercise will be conducted.)

(d) Tactical exercises without troops allow leaders to train on the ground, practicing land navigation movement, reporting, and other leader actions. (FM 25-4, Chapter 3.)

(e) Simulations and games teach leaders as part of a continuing officer and noncommissioned officer development program.

(f) Training extension courses present information and demonstrate how tasks are performed to standard using audiovisual equipment. (DA Pam 350-100.)

b. Training Tips. Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish the STX are as follows:

(1) Know the requirements for river crossing and passage of lines. (FMs 19-1 and 19-4.)

(2) Conduct a leader's reconnaissance of the training area with squad leaders to ensure that you do not make time consuming mistakes.

(3) Review the standards for the T&EOs that support this exercise.

(4) Coordinate for passage lanes, attack positions, supporting fires, and exchange of information with the passing unit:

(a) Enemy situation.

(b) Passing unit's rearward positions.

(c) Contact points.

(d) LPs/OPs/patrol routes.

(e) Passage points.

(f) Passage lanes.

(g) Obstacles/contaminated areas.

(h) Main battle area (MBA) initial positions.

(i) Command post for passing unit during passage.

(j) Assembly area for passing unit.

(k) Combat support/combat service support locations for emergency support.

(l) Traffic control points.

(m) SOI information.

(5) Conduct traffic control measures:

(a) FORWARD: Emphasize functions of MP at the contact points, passage points, passage lanes, and the assembly areas in the corps.

(b) REARWARD: MP will begin to support the rearward passage of lines once the passing units have the passage lane and enter the route to the assembly area.

(6) Coordinate communications, especially exchange of SOI, frequencies of the passing and stationary units, and challenge and password with the direct support platoon. All MPs involved in the passage of lines need to know what recognition signals the passing unit will display, the exact locations where elements of the passing unit will appear in front of them, and the number and types of vehicles that will need to be escorted or assisted from their assembly areas along the routes to the contact points/passage lanes.

(7) This STX may be conducted using several options:

(a) The exercise may be conducted with ammunition, without ammunition, or with live fire. The use of ammunition is encouraged to add more realism to the exercise.

(b) The exercise may be conducted with or without MILES. MILES provides better feedback and should be used, if available.

(c) The exercise can be conducted under all environmental conditions, both day and night, with or without NBC.

(8) Instructions for this STX are as follows:

(a) This STX should be initially trained and rehearsed slowly, on open terrain, during good visibility, and with frequent explanations and critiques by leaders. This simple execution, combined with a thorough prebrief and "chalk talks" constitutes the "crawl" stage of STX training. The "walk" phase of this STX entails conducting the training at closer to normal rates, on more difficult terrain, and with stops for explanation and critique only when problems occur (except for planned AARs). The STX is executed under conditions as close to those expected in combat as possible for the "run" phase. Full operational security, realistic time frames, challenging terrain, aggressive OPFOR, NBC environment, and movement distances. This exercise is conducted at full speed after conducting building-block training (individual training, drills) to reach the run level of execution.

(b) The T&EO standards for this exercise are in Chapter 5. These standards must be met to obtain the maximum benefits from the training.

(c) This exercise should be conducted on a recurring basis to sustain proficiency; however, since many of the T&EOs in this STX will be trained in other STXs, practice may occur through integration rather than retraining the STX.

(d) Ideally, the OPFOR replicates enemy forces in size and strength to realistically portray threat activities. (See Chapter 6.)

(e) At least one evaluator should be assigned to control OPFOR activities. The evaluator evaluates OPFOR actions, ensures realism, stresses safety, and assesses loss and damage. If the OPFOR is in groups for several simultaneous actions, additional OPFOR evaluators or controllers are necessary. (See Chapter 6.)

(f) OPFOR units should look and fight like potential enemy. This assists soldiers in understanding threat tactics, doctrine, and weapon systems. (See Chapter 6.)

(g) OPFOR should be trained prior to the exercise to ensure synchronization of events.

c. Training Enhancers. This STX requires the company to perform river crossing and passage of lines to move tactically.

(1) When basic proficiency is attained for the tasks in the STX, the STX may be conducted under limited visibility conditions, both with and without NVDs.

(2) This STX may be conducted under increasing MOPP levels as proficiency increases.

(3) This STX should also be conducted in a MOU environment.

**4. General Situation.** This exercise begins with the receipt of a FRAGO by the company and ends when passage of lines is completed. The final AAR should be conducted once all evaluation notes are compiled. If necessary, run portions of the exercise again until you are satisfied with your company's performance. Figure 4-18 provides a recommended sequence of events and time for each portion of the

STX.

| SEQUENCE   | EVENT  | ESTIMATED TIME |
|--|--|----------------|
| 1  | Receive mission, begin troop leading procedures. | 1.0 hr.        |
| 2  | Prepare for river crossing                       | 3.0 hrs.       |
| 3  | Cross river                                      | 1.0 hrs.       |
| 4  | Intermediate AAR                                 | .5 hrs.        |
| 5  | Coordinate for passage of lines                  | .5 hrs.        |
| 6  | Conduct passage of lines                         | 2.0 hrs.       |
| 7  | Final AAR  | .5             |
| 8  | Move tactically                                  | *              |
| TOTAL TIME   |  | 8.5 hrs.       |
| <p>NOTES:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* This task is integrated and evaluated throughout the exercise.</li> <li>° Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the training proficiency of the unit.</li> <li>° Additional time will be required if great portions of the exercise are conducted at night or during other limited visibility.</li> </ul> |  |                |

**Figure 4-18. Example Scenario for STX 19-2-E0006.**

### 5. Special Situation.

The company has received orders to prepare for and support a major battlefield movement to include a river crossing and passage of lines. The company receives the following FRAGO, Figure 4-19.

### FRAGMENTARY ORDER

#### 1. SITUATION.

- a. Enemy Forces. The enemy threat consists of Levels I and II activity in the corps AO.
- b. Friendly Forces. The corps is currently in a defensive posture while preparing for future offensive operations. Heavy military traffic will occur on the MSR within the next 48 hrs to resupply forward elements.

2. MISSION. (\_\_\_\_\_) Company supports battlefield movement to allow rapid movement of military traffic in support of corps operations.

#### 3. EXECUTION:

- a. Concept of the Operation. (See Overlay.)

(1) Intent. The purpose of the mission is to maintain freedom of movement for authorized traffic. The method we will use is support of a river crossing and POL within our AO. Endstate is defined as unimpeded movement of supplies to the forward combat elements.

(2) Fire Support. Priority of fire goes to base/base cluster defense.

- b. (Evaluated) Company

(1) Conduct river crossing operations.

(2) Conduct passage of lines.

- c. Coordinating Instructions.

(1) Priority of movement on the MSR--combat units, followed by support to combat units in contact (Class III, Class V, Class VIII).

(2) MOPP Level 1 in effect.

(3) Submit SITREPS to this HQ daily at 0600 hrs and 1800 hrs.

(4) PIR:

- Any information on possible enemy locations, size, and activity.
- Any reportable restrictions to the route.
- Any changes along MSR which may disrupt movement of traffic.

**Figure 4-19. Example FRAGO for STX 19-2-E0006**



4. SERVICE SUPPORT. No change.
5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.
  - a. Command.
    - (1) The company CP will be located at (grid).
    - (2) The higher headquarters CP will be located at (grid).
    - (3) Chain of command per SOP.
  - b. Signal.
    - (1) SOI in effect: KTV 1600C, time period 01.
    - (2) Cipher/authentication system in effect: KTC 1400D.

**Figure 4-19. Continued Example FRAGO for STX 19-2-E0006**

**6. Support Requirements:**

a. Minimum Trainers and OCs: This exercise will be conducted by the company commander who is the trainer and primary evaluator. If possible there should be at least two OCs for the unit. At least one other OC is required with the OPFOR.

b. Vehicles and Communications: All vehicles and radios organic to the company will be used. If a crossing area commander's HQ is used, additional radios will be required. Use of an OPFOR will require a radio for the OPFOR evaluator.

c. OPFOR: The support personnel should be used in this exercise after the company demonstrates basic proficiency. One platoon of OPFOR personnel is sufficient for a company exercise.

d. Training Area: An area of at least 2 by 3 kilometers is needed for this exercise. The terrain should include a river or stream with suitable bridge and fording sites. It should also include a road net on each side and multiple covered and concealed approaches.

e. Additional Equipment: This exercise requires the items listed in Figure 4-20. Experience dictates that the training will also require additional 5-gallon water cans, fuel, flashlights with BA-30 batteries, basic issue items for vehicles, and concertina wire. These items are intended as suggestions only. Local policy may not allow for provision of all items.

| AMMUNITION                          | QUANTITY               |            |           |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|------------|-----------|
| 5.56 mm, blank                      | 240 rds per M16 rifle  |            |           |
| 5.56 mm, blank                      | 240 rds per M4 carbine |            |           |
| 5.56 mm, blank linked               | 400 rds per M249 SAW   |            |           |
| Simulator, projectile, ground burst | 20 each exercise       |            |           |
| Simulator, hand grenade             | 20 each exercise       |            |           |
| OTHER ITEMS                         | QUANTITY               |            |           |
| Batteries, BA 200 (6 volt)          | 48 each                |            |           |
| Batteries, BA 3090 (9 volt)         | 560 each               |            |           |
| MILES EQUIPMENT                     | Company                | Evaluators | OPFOR     |
| M16/M4 system                       | 182                    |            | 1 platoon |
| Controller Guns                     |                        | 2          |           |
| Small arms alignment fixture        |                        | 1          |           |

**Figure 4-20. Example Suggested Support Requirements for STX 19-2-E0006.**

f. Commanders should consult local regulations and range control requirements during coordination to ensure compliance with restrictions such as constraints on pyrotechnics.

7. **T&EO Sequence:** Figure 4-21 lists the T&EOs from Chapter 5 used to evaluate this STX.

| TASK  | NUMBERS    | PAGE |
|---|------------|------|
| Coordinate MP Support to a River Crossing             | 19-2-11001 | 5-37 |
| Coordinate MP Support to a Passage of Lines Operation | 19-2-12004 | 5-40 |
| Supervise Movement to Contact                         | 19-2-22009 | 5-27 |

**Figure 4-21. T&EOs for STX 19-2-E0006.**

## CHAPTER 5

### Training and Evaluation Outlines

**5-1. Introduction.** This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the units. T&EOs are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks which support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

**5-2. Structure.** The T&EOs in this chapter are listed in Table 5-1. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

**5-3. Format.** The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

**a. Element.** This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that performs the task.

**b. Task.** This is a description of the action to be performed by the unit, and provides the task number.

**c. References.** These are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference which contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference do not underline the reference.

**d. Iteration.** Used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in MOPP4.

**e. Commander/Leader Assessment.** This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature and use all available evaluation data and submit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:

(1) T - Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.

(2) P - Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.

(3) U - Untrained. The unit can not demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

**f. Condition.** A statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

**g. Task standard.**

(1) The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training. It should be understood by every soldier.

(2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the

METT-TC conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common base line for unit performance.

**h. Task Steps and Performance Measures.** This is a listing of actions that is required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk (\*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

**i. GO/NO-GO column.** This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.

**j. Task performance/evaluation summary block.** This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as "GO". It also provides the evaluator a means to rate the units demonstrated performance as a "GO" or "NO-GO". It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

**k. Supporting Individual Tasks.** This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. Listed are the reference, tasks number, and task title.

**l. OPFOR standards.** These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished -- not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

**5-4. Use.** The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

**Intelligence**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Supervise Area Reconnaissance Operations (19-2-20002).....         | 5-5  |
| Supervise Zone Reconnaissance Operations (19-2-20003).....         | 5-7  |
| Coordinate Criminal Intelligence (19-2-51001).....                 | 5-9  |
| Coordinate Intelligence Collecting and Reporting (19-2-52001)..... | 5-11 |
| Supervise Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance (19-2-11002).....  | 5-13 |

**Maneuver**

|  |      |
|--|------|
| Secure and Defend Unit Position (07-2-C314).....                         | 5-16 |
| Direct Response Force Operations (19-2-22001).....                       | 5-19 |
| Direct a Delay (19-2-22007).....   | 5-21 |
| Supervise a Battle Handover to a Tactical Combat Force (19-2-22008)..... | 5-25 |
| Supervise Movement to Contact (19-2-22009).....                          | 5-27 |
| Direct a Deliberate Attack (19-2-22010).....                             | 5-29 |
| Monitor a Hasty Attack (19-2-22011).....                                 | 5-31 |
| Supervise Screening Operations (19-2-22012).....                         | 5-33 |
| Occupy a Site (19-2-60003).....  | 5-35 |
| Coordinate Military Police Support to River Crossing (19-2-11001).....   | 5-37 |
| Coordinate Military Police Support to Passage of Lines (19-2-12004)..... | 5-40 |

**Mobility and Survivability**

|   |      |
|---|------|
| Prepare For a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-2-C029).....                          | 5-43 |
| React To Smoke Operations (03-3-C209).....                                      | 5-44 |
| Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-C301).....                              | 5-46 |
| Maintain Operations Security (12-2-C332).....                                   | 5-48 |
| Supervise Convoy Security (19-2-20004).....                                     | 5-50 |
| Supervise Security for a Conventional Ammunition Supply Point (19-2-20008)..... | 5-52 |
| Conduct Deep-Water Port Security (19-2-20009).....                              | 5-54 |
| Supervise Pipeline Security (19-2-20010).....                                   | 5-56 |
| Supervise a Security of Designated Personnel (19-2-21001).....                  | 5-58 |
| Supervise MP Response to Base/Base Cluster Defense (19-2-22002).....            | 5-60 |
| Supervise Security of Critical Sites (19-2-22004).....                          | 5-62 |
| Supervise Cordon and Search Operations (19-2-22006).....                        | 5-65 |
| Conduct Radiological Survey (3-3-1041).....                                     | 5-67 |
| Prepare For a Chemical Attack (3-3-C202).....                                   | 5-69 |
| Respond To a Chemical Attack (3-3-C203).....                                    | 5-71 |
| Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (3-3-C208).....                        | 5-73 |
| Respond To The Residual Effects Of a Nuclear Attack (3-3-C222).....             | 5-75 |
| Respond To The Initial Effects Of A Nuclear Attack (3-3-C223).....              | 5-77 |
| Conduct Operational Decontamination (3-3-C224).....                             | 5-80 |
| Conduct Chemical Reconnaissance (3-3-C225).....                                 | 5-84 |
| Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (3-3-C226).....                            | 5-86 |
| Conduct a Convoy (55-2-C324).....   | 5-88 |
| Supervise Route Regulation Enforcement (19-2-12002).....                        | 5-92 |
| Supervise Route Signing (19-2-12003).....                                       | 5-94 |
| Supervise Dislocated Civilian Control Operations (19-2-13001).....              | 5-96 |
| Supervise Straggler Control Operations (19-2-13002).....                        | 5-98 |

**Air Defense**

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-2-C307)..... | 5-100 |
|---|-------|

**Combat Service Support**

|  |       |
|--|-------|
| Provide Food Service Support (10-2-C317).....  | 5-102 |
| Perform Unit Mortuary Affairs Operations (10-2-C318).....  | 5-105 |
| Provide Unit Supply Support (10-2-C320).....   | 5-107 |
| Maintain Unit Strength (12-2-C201.19-1201).....  | 5-109 |
| Conduct Unit Deployment (19-2-10001).....  | 5-111 |
| Supervise Area Damage Control Operations (19-2-20001).....                                       | 5-113 |
| Supervise Railway Security (19-2-20011).....   | 5-115 |
| Supervise Security of Command Post (19-2-22005).....   | 5-117 |
| Supervise EPW Holding Area (19-2-31003).....   | 5-120 |
| Supervise EPW/CI Collecting, Processing and Evacuating (19-2-31004).....                         | 5-123 |
| Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-2-31005).....                                       | 5-126 |
| Supervise Evacuation of U.S. Military Prisoners (19-2-32002).....                                | 5-128 |
| Supervise Field Detention Facility (FDF) for US Military Prisoners (19-2-32003).....             | 5-130 |
| Supervise Military Police Support to Populace and Resource Control Operations (19-2-33001).....  | 5-132 |
| Provide Military Police Support to Dislocated Civilian Resettlement Operations (19-2-33002)..... | 5-134 |
| Perform Company-Level Law and Order Operations (19-2-40001).....                                 | 5-136 |
| Establish an MP Law and Order Operations Center (19-2-40002).....                                | 5-139 |
| Conduct Company-Level Civil Disturbance Control Operations (19-2-40003).....                     | 5-141 |
| Coordinate Law Enforcement Patrol Operations (19-2-41001).....                                   | 5-144 |
| Provide MP Investigative Support (19-2-41002).....   | 5-146 |
| Perform Unit Level Maintenance (43-2-C322).....  | 5-148 |
| Occupy Assembly Area (7-3-C228).....   | 5-152 |

|   |       |
|---|-------|
| Treat Casualties (8-2-0003).....  | 5-155 |
| Transport Casualties (8-2-C316) .....   | 5-158 |
| Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction And Prevention Procedures (8-2-R303) ..... | 5-161 |
| Perform Field Sanitation Functions (8-2-R315) .....                             | 5-163 |
| <b>Command and Control</b>  |       |
| Perform Unit Communications (19-2-0031).....                                    | 5-166 |
| Issue Operations Order (19-2-60009).....  | 5-168 |

Figure 5-1. List of T&EO's

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Area Reconnaissance Operations (19-2-20002)  
(FM 19-4) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company is directed by higher headquarters to conduct area reconnaissance operations within its area of responsibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center ensures platoons conduct area reconnaissance patrols as planned and forwards updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning order.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Determines special requirements and equipment.</li> <li>d. Requests threat analysis.</li> <li>e. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>f. Determines commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).</li> <li>g. Determines platoon's area of responsibility.</li> <li>h. Issues written order.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant ensures support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Operations center coordinates mission requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates for reconnaissance over flight if possible (conduct map reconnaissance at minimum).</li> <li>b. Coordinates integration of indirect fire support and TACAIR..</li> <li>c. Coordinates with higher headquarters, adjacent, and supporting units.</li> <li>d. Determines if a response force is available and who is authorized to commit the reserve force.</li> <li>e. Coordinates host nation support.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. * Operations Sergeant coordinates with platoon(s) for area reconnaissance operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Specifies location/facility to be reconnoitered.</li> <li>b. Coordinates with platoon(s) for support requirements.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with platoon for implementing control measures to include:                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Phase lines.</li> <li>(2) Limits of advance.</li> <li>(3) Communications.</li> <li>(4) Intelligence on hostile threats.</li> </ol> </li> <li>d. Ensures engagement and disengagement criteria are specified.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Operations center receives situation reports/overlays from platoon(s).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidates into company overlay.</li> <li>b. Forwards situation reports to higher headquarters.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES                              | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| c. Forwards consolidated company overlay to higher headquarters. |    |       |
| 6. * Company Commander plans for future operations.              |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number                | Task Title                                    |
|--------------------|----------------------------|---|
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 051-196-4012               | Conduct A Platoon Reconnaissance Mission      |
|                    | 071-332-5021               | Prepare/Update Enemy/Friendly Situation Map   |
|                    | 071-420-0005               | Conduct The Maneuver Of A Platoon             |
|                    | 071-720-0015               | Conduct An Area Reconnaissance By A Platoon   |
|                    | 191-377-4202               | Establish/Supervise A Traffic Control Post    |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 191-377-4203P              | Establish/Supervise A Roadblock/Checkpoint    |
|                    | 191-377-4204               | Establish/Supervise A Defile                  |
|                    | 061-283-6003               | Adjust Indirect Fire                          |
|                    | 071-326-0515               | Select A Movement Route Using A Map           |
|                    | 071-326-5626               | Prepare An Oral Operation Order               |
|                    | 071-326-5630               | Conduct Movement Techniques By A Platoon      |
|                    | 071-332-5000               | Prepare An Operation Overlay                  |
|                    | 071-332-5022p              | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP) |
| 081-831-0101       | Request Medical Evacuation |   |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**



**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Zone Reconnaissance Operations (19-2-20003)  
(FM 19-4) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company is directed by higher headquarters to conduct zone reconnaissance operations in their area of responsibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center ensures platoons are provided the support needed for the reconnaissance and forwards updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning order.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Determines special requirements and equipment.</li> <li>d. Requests threat analysis.</li> <li>e. Determines commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).</li> <li>f. Conduct map reconnaissance.</li> <li>g. Determines platoon's area of responsibility.</li> <li>h. Makes a tentative plan.</li> <li>i. Issues written order.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant ensures support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Operations center coordinates preparations for zone reconnaissance with the platoon(s).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates for reconnaissance over flight if possible (conduct a map reconnaissance at a minimum).</li> <li>b. Coordinates integration of indirect fire support and tactical air support if possible.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with higher headquarters, adjacent, and supporting units.</li> <li>d. Determines if a reserve force is available and who is authorized to commit the reserve force.</li> <li>e. Establishes provisions for evacuation of enemy prisoners of war.</li> <li>f. Establishes provisions for medical evacuation.</li> <li>g. Establishes provisions for resupply.</li> <li>h. Establishes provisions for maintenance/recovery of equipment.</li> <li>i. Establishes communications.</li> <li>j. Coordinates engineer and ordnance units.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations center monitors area reconnaissance.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitors platoon(s) to ensure all terrain within the zone is reconnoitered to include built-up areas (BUA).</li> <li>b. Ensures platoon(s) inspects and evaluates all bridges within zone.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) locates fords or crossing sites near all bridges in zone.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| d. Ensures platoon(s) locates, marks, and bypasses all mines, obstacles, and barriers.<br>e. Ensures platoon(s) inspects and evaluates all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.<br>f. Ensures platoon(s) locates a bypass around BUAs, obstacles, and contaminated areas.<br>g. Ensures platoon(s) locates all enemy forces within zone.<br>h. Ensures platoon(s) reports all information in a timely manner.<br><br>5. Operations center prepares reports from the platoon(s.)<br>a. Receives situations/spot reports from company elements.<br>b. Updates company situation map.<br>c. Forwards situation reports to higher headquarters.<br>d. Forwards consolidated company overlay to higher headquarters.<br><br>6. * Company Commander plans for future operations. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title                                       |
|--------------------|---|--|
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                |
|                    | 071-332-5021p                                       | Prepare A Situation Map                          |
|                    | 071-720-0012  | Conduct A Zone Reconnaissance By A Platoon       |
|                    | 071-720-0012p                                       | Conduct A Zone Reconnaissance By A Platoon       |
|                    | 191-379-4405  | Plan Movement Of EPW/CI                          |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 061-283-6003  | Adjust Indirect Fire                             |
|                    | 071-326-0515  | Select A Movement Route Using A Map              |
|                    | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order                  |
|                    | 071-326-5630  | Conduct Movement Techniques By A Platoon         |
|                    | 071-326-5775  | Coordinate With An Adjacent Platoon              |
|                    | 071-332-5000  | Prepare An Operation Overlay                     |
|                    | 071-332-5022p                                       | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)    |
|                    | 081-831-0101  | Request Medical Evacuation                       |
|                    | 091-309-0711  | Direct Vehicle And Equipment Recovery Operations |
| 113-573-8006       | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI) |  |

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Coordinate Criminal Intelligence (19-2-51001)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has been directed to coordinate criminal intelligence operations in its area of responsibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** As the platoons gather information about the terrain, weather, HUMINT, and any criminal activities in the area of operation, the company will coordinate the collecting of information in the area of operations. The company will coordinate the collecting of the information and forward to higher headquarters for further analysis.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Company operations center coordinates with the platoon in gathering criminal intelligence information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Collects reconnaissance and surveillance information that supports the commander's overall PIR collection effort while on patrol.</li> <li>b. During processing, identify EPWs, stragglers, and dislocated civilians who may have information of potential intelligence value, and refer to proper military intelligence personnel.</li> <li>c. Establishes liaison with civil, military, and paramilitary police forces and law enforcement agencies in the area of operations.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with local host nation police agencies to determine the existence of organized crime in the area, as well as identification of current and emerging criminal leaders and their associates.</li> <li>e. Coordinates with local host nation police to identify types of criminal activity in the area (such as smuggling vice, counterfeiting, narcotics, extortion).</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Company operations center reports information of potential intelligence value.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gathers collected information from platoons.</li> <li>b. Consolidates information.</li> <li>c. Forwards information to higher headquarters for analysis and determination of intelligence.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| <b>References</b>  | <b>Task Number</b> | <b>Task Title</b>   |
|--------------------|--------------------|---|
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-332-5021       | Prepare/Update Enemy/Friendly Situation Map                             |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 191-379-4402       | Plan Roadblocks And Checkpoints   |
|                    | 191-379-4409       | Plan Establishment Of Traffic Control Post                              |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-332-5022p      | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                           |
| STP MP OES-CAPTAIN | 191-400-0024       | Plan the Collecting and Reporting of Criminal/Terrorist Intelligence    |
|                    | 191-400-0028       | Coordinate with Host Nation Police                                      |
|                    | 191-400-0041       | Establish Liaison with Other Military/Civilian Law Enforcement Agencies |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Coordinate Intelligence Collecting and Reporting (19-2-52001)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company is conducting area security, maneuver and mobility, internment/resettlement, and law and order operations in their area of responsibility. The company commander directs the operations center to coordinate intelligence collecting and reporting with platoon(s). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Operations center ensures platoon(s) collects and reports intelligence in accordance with the priorities established by higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts mission analysis.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identifies specified and implied tasks.</li> <li>(2) Identifies essential tasks from specified and implied tasks.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Determines current friendly/enemy situation and courses of action.</li> <li>c. Analyzes courses of action through war gaming process.</li> <li>d. Compares courses of action.</li> <li>e. Makes a decision.</li> <li>f. Determines personnel and equipment requirements for the mission.</li> <li>g. Conducts a map reconnaissance, at a minimum, of the area of responsibility.</li> <li>h. Issues warning orders to platoons.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant provides support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Operations center establishes guidelines for platoon intelligence collection and reporting forces.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Specifies priority requirements (PIR) to the platoon(s).</li> <li>b. Specifies information requirements (IR) to the platoon(s).</li> <li>c. Establishes collection reporting procedures.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations center collects current information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives situation/spot reports.</li> <li>b. Updates company situation map.</li> <li>c. Forwards situation/spot reports to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Forwards updates overlay to higher headquarters.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title   |
|--------------------|---------------|--|
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                                    |
|                    | 071-332-5021p | Prepare A Situation Map  |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order                                      |
|                    | 071-332-5022  | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                        |
|                    | 071-332-5022p | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                        |
|                    | 113-573-0002  | Conduct Operations Security (OPSEC) Procedures                       |
| STP MP OES-CAPTAIN | 191-400-0024  | Plan the Collecting and Reporting of Criminal/Terrorist Intelligence |
|                    | 191-400-0025  | Direct Intelligence Collecting and Reporting                         |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: GATHER INTELLIGENCE (19-OPFOR-1008)**

**CONDITION:** Small OPFOR elements, operating in the rear area, are planning attacks on enemy bases. Information is needed to complete plans.

**STANDARD:** 1. Identify all priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements. 2. Pass through any outpost, defensive wire, or warning device undetected. 3. Move to an OP that offers cover and concealment and is close enough to gather priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements. 4. Gather all priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements. 5. Withdraw from area undetected. 6. Report all information to OPFOR HQ.

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance (19-2-11002)  
 (FM 19-4) (FM 5-36)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company is directed by higher headquarters to supervise route reconnaissance and surveillance operations on routes within the company area of responsibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company verifies that current detailed information about specific routes and nearby terrain is consolidated into the company overlay and submits the updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning order.</li> <li>b. Conducts a mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Identifies time and resources available.</li> <li>e. Back briefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Issues written orders.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant ensures support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Operation center coordinates with the platoon(s) to implement route reconnaissance and surveillance operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Specifies routes and terrain to be reconnoitered and surveyed.</li> <li>b. Coordinates platoon(s) support requirements.</li> <li>c. Establishes guidelines for completion of overlays to company headquarters.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with higher headquarters communication section.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations center monitors the platoon's execution of the operation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives platoon(s) overlay/reconnaissance mission.</li> <li>b. Ensures correct military symbols are used.</li> <li>c. Records information into company overlay.</li> <li>d. Company plans for future operations based on information from DA Form 1248.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Operations center forwards information to higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Consolidates information onto company situation map.</li> <li>b. Forwards situation/spot report.</li> <li>c. Forwards updated overlay/route reconnaissance report.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. * Company Commander plans for future operations.</li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0014 | Direct Route Surveillance and Security                                |
|                    | 191-400-0016 | Direct a Hasty Route Reconnaissance                                   |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 051-196-3019 | Plan, Supervise, And Report The Results Of Hasty Route Reconnaissance |
|                    | 071-326-0515 | Select A Movement Route Using A Map                                   |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 051-196-3065 | Prepare A Route Reconnaissance Overlay                                |
|                    | 071-326-5805 | Conduct A Route Reconnaissance Mission                                |
|                    | 071-331-0820 | Analyze Terrain   |
|                    | 071-332-5004 | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                                     |
|                    | 081-831-0101 | Request Medical Evacuation  |
|                    | 113-573-8006 | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)                   |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (19-OPFOR-1005)**

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular, and/or irregular elements in the enemy rear area along main supply routes and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** 1. Set up well-concealed locations. 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected targets. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being detected. 6. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

**TASK: CONDUCT HASTY AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1003)**

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is moving in a wooded area when an enemy march element is seen moving along a nearby route.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Inflict casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflict damage to vehicles and equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delay enemy march element from reaching its destination for a specified period. 6. Withdraw, on order, within two minutes of ambush initiation. 7. Sustain minimum casualties. 8. Report actions to superiors.



**TASK:** CONDUCT DELIBERATE AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1004)

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is operating along an enemy main supply route. OPFOR intelligence has reported that an enemy element is conducting a road march along the route. OPFOR has set up an ambush. The march element is approximately 15 minutes from the ambush point. The OPFOR element possesses automatic weapons, antiarmor weapons, and command detonated mines. OPFOR HQ has ordered complete destruction of march element.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Force enemy march element to halt in kill zone. 4. Initiate ambush on order of OPFOR leader. 5. Kill, wound, or capture all enemy personnel, and destroy all specified vehicles and equipment in the kill zone. 6. Engage all enemy reinforcement and security elements. 7. Sustain minimum casualties from enemy forces. 8. Consolidate and withdraw from the area on order. 9. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements.

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 S4 Section  
 Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 PM Section  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 MP Detachment (I/R)(EPW/CI)

**TASK:** Secure and Defend Unit Position (07-2-C314)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 101-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The HHC has received an OPORD/FRAGO mission requiring the unit to provide its own security and defense. OPFOR elements consisting of as much as a motorized rifle company or airborne equivalent have been active in friendly rear areas. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The HHC completes all preparations for the defense within the time specified by the OPORD and the HHC is not surprised by the OPFOR.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The commander develops a defensive plan in accordance with the OPORD/FRAGO.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes sectors or boundaries for subordinate elements.</li> <li>b. Assigns battle positions for company elements.</li> <li>c. Designates primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.</li> <li>d. Designates engagement areas.</li> <li>e. Develops fire support plan including TRPs forward, within, and to the rear of the defensive position.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The commander conducts a leader's reconnaissance with section leaders.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes local security.</li> <li>b. Confirms or modifies his plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. The leaders survey terrain to finalize their defensive plans.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify covered and concealed routes to and between all positions.</li> <li>b. Identify all avenues of approach.</li> <li>c. Identify dead space.</li> <li>d. Identify locations for company CP, OPs, supply point, and company casualty collection point.</li> <li>e. Identify potential LZs the enemy might use for air assault.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 4. The commander designates unit positions or sectors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Concentrates fire on the most dangerous and most likely avenues of approach.</li> <li>b. Has good fields of fire and observation of enemy ground and air forces.</li> <li>c. Provides cover and concealment.</li> <li>d. Permits adequate dispersion laterally and in depth.</li> </ul> <p>5. HHC establishes unit security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes OPs and air guards.</li> <li>b. Conducts patrols in areas that cannot be observed.</li> <li>c. Emplaces early warning devices.</li> <li>d. Conducts stand-to per SOP or order.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. Leaders position key weapons and establish fields of fire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Orient to provide all-round security.</li> <li>b. Must cover most dangerous avenues of approach, engagement areas, or selected kill zones based on defensive technique.</li> <li>c. Establish and maintain mutual support between elements.</li> <li>d. Ensure antiarmor weapons cover likely avenues of approach.</li> <li>e. Register indirect fire at FPF on the most dangerous dismounted avenue(s) of approach (where possible).</li> </ul> <p>* 7. Leaders check position for potential problems.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Walk positions and adjust for fields of fire.</li> <li>b. Key leaders and their subordinates go to the front of their positions and walk the terrain to determine if the positions accomplish their assigned tasks.</li> </ul> <p>* 8. Leaders coordinate with flank elements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establish responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach.</li> <li>b. Exchange information on OP locations, patrols, unit signals, and passage points.</li> <li>c. The commander coordinates a withdrawal plan.</li> </ul> <p>9. Establishes communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses wire as primary communications if available.</li> <li>b. Ensures platoon/company CP has communication with OPs, higher and subordinate leaders, adjacent units, and fire support.</li> <li>c. Conducts periodic communications checks to ensure that all are operational.</li> <li>d. Plans and provides alternate means of communications.</li> </ul> <p>10. Emplaces minefields and obstacles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The commander requests and receives clearance to lay protective minefields.</li> <li>b. Emplace mines/obstacles IAW company obstacle plan.</li> <li>c. Covers mines/obstacles by observation, and with direct and indirect fires.</li> <li>d. Reports locations of mines/obstacles to all elements.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References          | Task Number        | Task Title  |
|---------------------|--------------------|---|
| STP 19-95B1-SM      | 071-326-0501       | Move As A Member Of A Fire Team   |
|                     | 071-326-0501p      | Move As A Member Of A Fire Team   |
|                     | 191-376-4108       | Operate A Dismount Point  |
|                     | 191-376-4108P      | Operate A Dismount Point  |
| STP 19-95B234-SM-TG | 051-191-2364       | Inspect Personnel, Equipment, And Defensive Positions For Proper Camouflage       |
|                     | 071-331-1003       | Installation Planning And Installation Of A Platoon Early Warning System An/Trs-2 |
|                     | 071-331-1003p      | Installation Planning And Installation Of A Platoon Early Warning System An/Trs-2 |
|                     | 113-594-2014       | Operate Switchboard, Telephone, Manual Sb-22(*)/Pt                                |
|                     | 113-594-2014p      | Operate Switchboard, Telephone, Manual Sb-22(*)/Pt                                |
|                     | 113-600-1012       | Install Telephone Set Ta-312/Pt   |
|                     | 113-600-1012p      | Install Telephone Set Ta-312/Pt   |
|                     | 113-600-3017       | Perform Unit Level Maintenance On Telephone Set Ta-312/Pt                         |
|                     | 113-600-3017p      | Perform Unit Level Maintenance (ULM) On Telephone Set Ta-312/Pt                   |
|                     | STP 19-95B23-SM-TG | 051-192-3032  |
| 191-377-4201        |                    | Establish/Supervise A Dismount Point  |
| 191-377-4201p       |                    | Supervise The Establishment And Operation Of A Dismount Point                     |
| STP 21-1-SMCT       | 071-312-3003       | Lay An M60 Machine Gun Using Field Expedients                                     |
| STP 21-24-SMCT      | 071-326-5770       | Prepare A Platoon Sector Sketch   |
|                     | 071-326-5770p      | Prepare A Platoon Sector Sketch   |
| STP MP OES-CAPTAIN  | 071-331-0820       | Analyze Terrain   |
|                     | 191-400-0026       | Direct The Security Of A Tactical Operations Center (TOC)                         |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Direct Response Force Operations (19-2-22001)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The MP company has a requirement to provide a response force and has designated an element as a response force. Daily INTSUM/OPSUM with graphics are being passed to the platoon. A situation develops that requires response force operations be conducted. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Communications, information flow, and support are provided throughout the operation.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives the mission and conducts a mission analysis.</li> <li>2. * Company Commander goes through the troop leading procedures culminating in issuance of an order/FRAGO.</li> <li>3. Communications section ensures communication with the deployed force and conducts retransmission as needed.</li> <li>4. Company headquarters/operations center forwards situation report.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Updates map.</li> <li>b. Forwards to battalion S3 or division provost marshal.</li> <li>c. Keeps platoon advised of the following:                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Location of adjacent units.</li> <li>(2) Location of threatened friendly forces.</li> <li>(3) Location of noncombatants.</li> <li>(4) Guidance from battalion or provost marshal.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> <li>5. * Company Commander coordinates support requests.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Forwards requests.</li> <li>b. Advises response force leader of status of requested support.</li> <li>c. Coordinates for fire support to include indirect and close air.</li> </ol> </li> <li>6. * First Sergeant or medical section coordinates for the evacuation of casualties.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses organic assets when feasible.</li> <li>b. Coordinates for air evacuation as needed.</li> <li>c. Identifies and marks landing zone if used.</li> </ol> </li> <li>7. * Supply Sergeant coordinates additional logistics support for response force.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Includes rations (class I).</li> <li>b. Includes petroleum, oil, and lubricants (class III).</li> <li>c. Includes ammunition (class V).</li> <li>d. Includes recovery items.</li> <li>e. Includes maintenance items (class IX).</li> </ol> </li> <li>8. * Company operations coordinates with follow-on forces and support.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates with additional MP assets.</li> <li>b. Coordinates with the tactical combat force.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with air support.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES                                   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| d. Coordinates with PSYOPS and civilian affairs teams.                |    |       |
| 9. * Company Commander supports platoon reconciliation or resolution. |    |       |
| a. Performs cross leveling of vehicles and equipment.                 |    |       |
| b. Requests replacement vehicles, equipment, and personnel.           |    |       |
| c. Plans for future operations.                                       |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References     | Task Number  | Task Title   |
|----------------|--------------|--|
| STP 21-24-SMCT | 071-430-0007 | Consolidate A Platoon Following Enemy Contact While In The Defense |
|                | 071-430-0008 | Reorganize A Platoon Following Enemy Contact While In The Defense  |
|                | 071-326-5626 | Prepare An Oral Operation Order                                    |
|                | 113-571-1022 | Perform Voice Communications                                       |
|                | 113-573-8006 | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)                |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Direct A Delay (19-2-22007)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has made contact with a hostile element and is directed to another location. The company commander directs the company operations center to check with the affected platoon(s) and direct a delay. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center confirms that the platoon(s) received the support needed to conduct the delay and submits updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander upon receiving the mission and begins to formulate commander's estimate:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Considers the following effects on courses of action (COA):                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Weather</li> <li>(2) Terrain</li> <li>(3) Enemy Situation</li> <li>(4) Own Situation</li> <li>(5) Relative Combat Power</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Analyzes possible courses of action.                   <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy capabilities.</li> <li>(2) Actions required to meet/counter/delay threat</li> <li>(3) Advantages/Disadvantages to each COA</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Compares courses of action.</li> <li>d. Identifies initial company delaying positions.</li> <li>e. Conducts a map reconnaissance and identifies general routes of regress between successive delay positions.</li> <li>f. Issues warning order to platoons.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * Company Commander and operations center upon making a tentative plan begin initial movement.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Plan for future offensive operations.</li> <li>b. Coordinates for fire support plan to include TAC Air into delay operation.</li> <li>c. Coordinates for evacuation routes.</li> <li>d. Specifies and coordinates for control measures to be used during the delay.</li> <li>e. Identifies ROE and Use of Force criteria.</li> <li>f. Directs company to begin movement towards initial delaying positions.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Operation center begins action prior to commencement of delaying action.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes communications with higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Coordinates for platoon equipment and material requests.</li> <li>c. Begins initial tracking of equipment/personnel losses in the company tactical operation center.</li> <li>d. Keeps commander informed of when platoons are in their initial delaying positions.</li> <li>e. Coordinates with higher headquarters for any host-nation concerns.</li> <li>f. Coordinates with higher headquarters for plans to incorporate the tactical combat force (TCF) if required, to include battle handover line.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>4. * Company Commander and platoon leaders conduct reconnaissance of key terrain.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes initial screen line.</li> <li>b. Ensures continuous surveillance of key terrain under all visibility conditions.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Surveys high-speed routes or avenues of approach into the sector.</li> <li>(2) Visually scans TRPs.</li> <li>(3) Employs vehicle optics, binoculars, and night-vision devices as necessary.</li> <li>(4) Establishes LP/OPs.</li> <li>(5) Finalizes company positions used during the delay.</li> <li>(6) Finalizes dismounted and mounted likely avenues of approach.</li> <li>(7) Finalizes kill zones and engagement areas and ensures sectors of fire and boundaries specified to ensure no fratricide incidents occur.</li> <li>(8) Finalizes covered and concealed approach route to delaying positions.</li> <li>(9) Finalizes regress routes to delay positions.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>5. * Company Commander completes plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Back briefs higher headquarters on plan.</li> <li>b. Receives approval of plan from higher headquarters issues plan to company using sketches or terrain board during briefing.</li> </ul> <p>6. * Company Commander and First Sergeant supervises positioning of company into delay positions and METT-TC dependent, conduct delay rehearsals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Supervises placement of security outposts and patrols.</li> <li>b. Ensures placement of key weapons systems.</li> <li>c. Ensures communication is established and maintained.</li> <li>d. Ensures obstacles are emplaced with overall plan.</li> <li>e. Ensures supplementary and alternates positions are prepared.</li> <li>f. Supervises delay rehearsals as company elements retrograde to alternate positions to an established battle hand off line.</li> </ul> <p>7. * First Sergeant checks on individual soldiers requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures classes I, III, V, and VIII are on-hand.</li> <li>b. Establishes a resupply rate is established with higher headquarters, to include new people.</li> <li>c. Ensures communications with higher headquarters is established and maintained.</li> <li>d. Oversees medical evacuation of wounded personnel.</li> </ul> <p>8. Operations center personnel monitor the delaying action.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Forwards reports to higher headquarters on the status of company contact with the enemy.</li> <li>b. Maintains communications with platoons and higher headquarters.</li> <li>c. Tracks the battle at the company tactical operations center.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with higher headquarters on the employment of the TCF into the battle.</li> </ul> <p>9. * Company Commander directs the conduct of the delaying action.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitors the progress of the action with the enemy.</li> <li>b. Monitors the reports received by the company tactical operations center.</li> <li>c. Identifies specified disengagement criteria.</li> <li>d. Monitors to ensure prevention of fratricide among the delaying platoons.</li> <li>e. Monitors the reports received by the company tactical operations center.</li> </ul> |    |       |



| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>10. * Company Commander and First Sergeant supervise consolidation and reorganizing of the company after the mission.</p> <p>a. Monitors the reports received by the company tactical operation center.</p> <p>b. Establishes communications with higher headquarters.</p> <p>c. Requests the TCF to the specified and coordinated battle handoff line.</p> <p>d. Monitors the delaying platoons to ensure a fluid transition with the TCF.</p> <p>e. Requests and coordinates for communications with the TCF.</p> <p>f. Prepares to fall under the control of the TCF until the threat is eliminated or relieved of the mission.</p> |    |       |
| <p>11. * Company Commander and First Sergeant supervise consolidation and reorganizing of the company after the mission.</p> <p>a. Move company to new positions.</p> <p>b. Identify casualties and equipment losses.</p> <p>c. Maintain communications with higher headquarters and updates on company status.</p> <p>d. Prepare for future operations.</p>  |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title  |
|--------------------|---------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0018  | Direct Area/Zone Reconnaissance Patrol Operations                           |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-326-5605p | Control Movement Of A Fire Team   |
|                    | 071-326-5611p | Conduct The Maneuver Of A Squad   |
|                    | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order   |
|                    | 071-332-5021  | Prepare/Update Enemy/Friendly Situation Map                                 |
|                    | 071-410-0012p | Supervise Occupation Of An Assembly Area                                    |
|                    | 071-410-0019P | Control Organic Fires   |
|                    | 191-377-4200  | Determine And Use Techniques Of Movement For Mounted MP Squad               |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 051-191-2364  | Inspect Personnel, Equipment, And Defensive Positions For Proper Camouflage |
|                    | 051-196-3065  | Prepare A Route Reconnaissance Overlay                                      |
|                    | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order   |
|                    | 071-326-5705  | Establish An Observation Post   |
|                    | 071-326-5770  | Prepare A Platoon Sector Sketch   |
|                    | 071-328-5301  | Inspect Personnel/Equipment   |
|                    | 071-332-5000  | Prepare An Operation Overlay  |
|                    | 091-309-0711  | Direct Vehicle And Equipment Recovery Operations                            |
|                    | 113-573-8006  | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)                         |
|                    | 121-030-3534  | Report Casualties   |

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

| References | Task Number  | Task Title                                    |
|------------|--------------|---|
|            | 551-721-3359 | Prepare A Strip Map                           |
|            | 071-332-5022 | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP) |

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

#### **TASK:** MAINTAIN CONTACT (19-OPFOR-1011)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR element is tactically engaged with enemy base defense forces. Enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** 1. Engage enemy forces decisively. 2. Advance own unit or forces as enemy withdraws. 3. Inflict maximum casualties.

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise a Battle Handover to a Tactical Combat Force (19-2-22008)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has responded to a base/base cluster under attack from a level of threat that could not be defeated by base/base cluster defense forces. The platoon sized response force has been unable to counter the threat and has requested additional support. The rear operations commander, as a result of the larger threat force and the danger it poses to critical base/base clusters in the vicinity, commits a TCF to the battle. The MP response force has been directed to conduct a battle handover to the TCF. The company commander coordinates for the battle handoff with higher headquarters, and the rear area operations center coordinates with the TCF and monitors the response force conducting a battle handoff. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Operations center ensures battle handoff has been accomplished and provides updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Company Commander upon receiving the mission from higher headquarters, conducts estimates of the situation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts mission analysis.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identifies specified and implied tasks.</li> <li>(2) Identifies essential tasks from specified and implied tasks.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Determines current friendly/enemy situation and courses of action.</li> <li>c. Analyzes courses of action through war gaming process.</li> <li>d. Compares courses of action.</li> <li>e. Makes a decision.</li> <li>f. Determines personnel and equipment requirements for the mission.</li> <li>g. Coordinates with higher headquarters the rules of engagement, use of force criteria, and Geneva Convention requirements.</li> <li>h. Coordinates for host nation support and for host nation requirements regarding the execution of the mission.</li> <li>i. Conducts a map reconnaissance, at a minimum, of the area of responsibility.</li> <li>j. Issues warning order to platoon(s).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. First Sergeant provides support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuations.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Operation Sergeant coordinates TCF preparations with the platoon(s) for conducting a battle handoff.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provides current battle intelligence.</li> <li>b. Specifies battle handover time.</li> <li>c. Specifies battle handover line (BHL).</li> <li>d. Establishes security and fire support for MP withdrawal.</li> <li>e. Conduct SOI data exchange.</li> <li>f. Monitors platoon(s) conduct of the battle handover.</li> <li>g. Establishes communications.</li> <li>h. Establishes recognition signals.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| i. Determines status of obstacles and routes.<br>j. Provides updated information on friendly and foe to platoons.<br>k. Coordinates passages.<br>l. Coordinates command and control.<br>m. Dispatches representatives to contact points.<br>n. Determines combat support and combat service support requirements (forward passage of lines).<br><br>4. Operations center monitors platoon(s) conduct of the operation.<br>a. Receives situation/spot reports.<br>b. Updates company situation map.<br>c. Coordinates with higher headquarters for TCF arrival onto the battlefield.<br><br>5. Operations center forwards current information to higher headquarters.<br>a. Forwards situation/spot reports.<br>b. Forwards updated overlay. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title   |
|--------------------|--------------|--|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0019 | Plan A Battle Handoff To A Tactical Combat Force (TCF)       |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-326-5832 | Plan A Withdrawal Under Enemy Pressure                       |
|                    | 071-332-5004 | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                            |
|                    | 071-332-5021 | Prepare/Update Enemy/Friendly Situation Map                  |
|                    | 051-195-3005 | Direct Construction Of Non-Explosive Antivehicular Obstacles |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-326-5630 | Conduct Movement Techniques By A Platoon                     |
|                    | 071-326-5775 | Coordinate With An Adjacent Platoon                          |
|                    | 071-332-5000 | Prepare An Operation Overlay                                 |
|                    | 113-573-8006 | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)          |
|                    | 071-326-5626 | Prepare An Oral Operation Order                              |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Movement to Contact (19-2-22009)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has received a verbal order from higher headquarters to conduct movement to contact. The company operations center supervises the operation. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Operations center supervises the movement to contact and provides updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts mission analysis.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identifies specified and implied tasks.</li> <li>(2) Identifies essential tasks from specified and implied tasks.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Determines current friendly/enemy situation and courses of action.</li> <li>c. Analyzes courses of action through wargaming process.</li> <li>d. Compares courses of action.</li> <li>e. Makes a decision.</li> <li>f. Determines personnel and equipment requirements for the mission.</li> <li>g. Coordinates with higher headquarters the rules of engagement and the use of force criteria, and Geneva Convention requirements.</li> <li>h. Coordinates for host nation support and for host nation requirements regarding the execution of the mission.</li> <li>i. Conducts a map reconnaissance, at minimum, of the area of responsibility.</li> <li>j. Issues warning order to platoons.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant provides support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuations.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Operations center coordinates with the platoon(s) to conduct movement to contact.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluates and understand the mission.</li> <li>b. Establishes communications with platoon(s) to include all signs.</li> <li>c. Determines the friendly and enemy situation.</li> <li>d. Coordinates the route (axis and advance) and desired rate of movement.</li> <li>e. Coordinates control measures to be used.</li> <li>f. Coordinates the width of the area to be cleared.</li> <li>g. Coordinates attachments, if any.</li> <li>h. Coordinates fire support.</li> <li>i. Coordinates necessary movement.</li> <li>j. Coordinates host nation support.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations center monitors platoon(s) conduct during movement to contact.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitors communications with platoons and higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Monitors fire support.</li> <li>c. Monitors engineer activities.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| d. Monitors the route (axis and advance) and desired rate of movement.<br>e. Maintains updated situation map/overlay.<br><br>5. Operation center forwards current information to higher headquarters.<br>a. Receives situation/spot reports from platoon(s).<br>b. Consolidates information into company situation map.<br>c. Forwards situation/spot reports.<br>d. Forwards updated overlay. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title  |
|--------------------|---------------|---|
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-326-5605p | Control Movement Of A Fire Team   |
|                    | 071-326-5611p | Conduct The Maneuver Of A Squad   |
|                    | 071-332-5021  | Prepare/Update Enemy/Friendly Situation Map                             |
|                    | 071-410-0019P | Control Organic Fires   |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-326-0515  | Select A Movement Route Using A Map                                     |
|                    | 071-326-5630  | Conduct Movement Techniques By A Platoon                                |
|                    | 071-326-5775  | Coordinate With An Adjacent Platoon                                     |
|                    | 071-329-1019  | Use A Map Overlay   |
|                    | 071-332-5000  | Prepare An Operation Overlay  |
|                    | 071-332-5022  | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                           |
|                    | 081-831-0101  | Request Medical Evacuation  |
|                    | 113-573-4003  | Encode And Decode Messages Using KTC<br>600(*) Tactical Operations Code |
|                    | 113-573-8006  | Use An Automated Signal Operation<br>Instruction (SOI)                  |
|                    | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order   |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Direct a Deliberate Attack (19-2-22010)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company is conducting combat operations in support of rear operations. The company commander has been ordered from higher headquarters to a direct a deliberate attack on hostile elements that have breached the rear area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company main body is not surprised or fixed by the enemy. The company accomplishes its assigned task within the commander's intent. The company kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of the enemy. The company accomplishes the mission NLT the time specified in the OPORD. The company maintains a sufficient fighting force capable of defeating an enemy counterattack and continuing further combat support operations.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>b. Determines special requirements and equipment.</li> <li>c. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Identifies time and resources available.</li> <li>e. Backbriefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Issues written or oral orders to the platoon(s).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. First Sergeant provides support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuations.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Operations Sergeant coordinates preparations for a deliberate attack with the platoon(s).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures operational security (OPSEC) measures are followed.</li> <li>b. Prepares map overlay.</li> <li>c. Coordinates fire support requirements.</li> <li>d. Determines explosives required.</li> <li>e. Coordinates close air support requirements.</li> <li>f. Establishes provisions for evacuation of enemy prisoners of war.</li> <li>g. Establishes provisions for maintenance.</li> <li>h. Establishes procedures for captured enemy equipment and intelligence.</li> <li>i. Resupply provisions.</li> <li>j. Establishes provisions for evacuation of wounded.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Operations center receives current information.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives situation/spot reports from platoon(s).</li> <li>b. Updates company situation map.</li> <li>c. Forwards situation/spot reports to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Forwards updated overlay to higher headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title  |
|--------------------|---------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0015  | Plan Area Damage Control Operations                                     |
|                    | 191-400-0016  | Direct a Hasty Route Reconnaissance                                     |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 051-196-2019  | Conduct And Report A Hasty Route Reconnaissance                         |
|                    | 051-196-4012  | Conduct A Platoon Reconnaissance Mission                                |
|                    | 071-326-5505  | Issue An Oral Operation Order   |
|                    | 071-326-5611  | Conduct The Maneuver Of A Squad   |
|                    | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                                       |
|                    | 071-332-5021p | Prepare A Situation Map   |
|                    | 071-410-0012  | Supervise Occupation Of An Assembly Area                                |
|                    | 071-420-0005  | Conduct The Maneuver Of A Platoon                                       |
|                    | 071-410-0019  | Control Organic Fires   |
|                    |               | 113-573-4003  |
|                    | 191-377-4205  | Supervise Processing Of EPW/CI At A Collecting Point Or Holding Area    |
|                    | 191-378-6079  | Supervise Transfer Of EPW/CI To Collecting Point/Holding Area/Enclosure |
| STP 21-1-SMCT      | 071-332-5022p | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                           |
|                    | 061-283-6003  | Adjust Indirect Fire  |
|                    | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order   |
|                    | 071-326-5630  | Conduct Movement Techniques By A Platoon                                |
|                    | 071-326-5775  | Coordinate With An Adjacent Platoon                                     |
|                    | 071-326-5805  | Conduct A Route Reconnaissance Mission                                  |
|                    | 071-332-5000  | Prepare An Operation Overlay  |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**



**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Monitor a Hasty Attack (19-2-22011)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Enemy forces have been sighted in the MP platoon's area of operations. Size and strength of the enemy are known to be squad size, reinforced. The MP commander has issued the platoon leader a verbal attack order. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operation center monitors the platoon's conduct of a hasty attack and forwards updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| 1. * Company Commander issues oral order to platoon(s).<br>2. * First Sergeant ensures medical evacuation plan is in place.<br>3. Operations center monitors platoon(s) hasty attack.<br>a. Monitors communications to include call signs and frequencies.<br>b. Monitors control measures for platoon(s) movement to contact.<br>c. Determine if reserve or response force is needed.<br>d. Monitors close air support requirements.<br>e. Coordinates fire support requirements.<br>f. Monitors evacuation of enemy prisoners of war.<br>g. Monitors resupply and recovery operations.<br>4. Operations center receives current information.<br>a. Receives situation/spot reports from platoon(s).<br>b. Updates company situation map.<br>c. Forwards situation/spot reports to higher headquarters.<br>d. Forwards updated overlays to higher headquarters. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title                                      |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0015 | Plan Area Damage Control Operations             |
|                    | 191-400-0016 | Direct a Hasty Route Reconnaissance             |
|                    | 191-400-0020 | Plan a Hasty Attack                             |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 051-196-2019 | Conduct And Report A Hasty Route Reconnaissance |
|                    | 051-196-4012 | Conduct A Platoon Reconnaissance Mission        |

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References     | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|----------------|--------------|---|
|                | 071-326-5505 | Issue An Oral Operation Order   |
|                | 071-326-5611 | Conduct The Maneuver Of A Squad   |
|                | 071-332-5004 | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                                       |
|                | 071-332-5021 | Prepare/Update Enemy/Friendly Situation Map                             |
|                | 071-410-0012 | Supervise Occupation Of An Assembly Area                                |
|                | 071-410-0019 | Control Organic Fires   |
|                | 071-420-0005 | Conduct The Maneuver Of A Platoon                                       |
|                | 191-377-4205 | Supervise Processing Of EPW/CI At A Collecting Point Or Holding Area    |
|                | 191-378-6079 | Supervise Transfer Of EPW/CI To Collecting Point/Holding Area/Enclosure |
| STP 21-24-SMCT | 061-283-6003 | Adjust Indirect Fire  |
|                | 071-326-5626 | Prepare An Oral Operation Order   |
|                | 071-326-5630 | Conduct Movement Techniques By A Platoon                                |
|                | 071-326-5775 | Coordinate With An Adjacent Platoon                                     |
|                | 071-326-5805 | Conduct A Route Reconnaissance Mission                                  |
|                | 071-332-5000 | Prepare An Operation Overlay  |
|                | 071-332-5022 | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                           |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Screening Operations (19-2-22012)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has been placed in the operational control of a tactical combat force and has been ordered to conduct a screen of its flank during movement. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company supervises the platoon(s) conducting a screening operation that provides early warning to the tactical combat forces in their assigned sectors.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts mission analysis.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identifies specified and implied tasks.</li> <li>(2) Identifies essential tasks from specified and implied tasks.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Determines current friendly/enemy situation and course of action.</li> <li>c. Analyzes courses of action through wargaming process.</li> <li>d. Compares courses of action.</li> <li>e. Makes a decision.</li> <li>f. Determines personnel and equipment requirements for the mission.</li> <li>g. Coordinates and finalizes with higher headquarters the rules of engagement, use of force criteria, and the Geneva Convention requirements.</li> <li>h. Coordinates for host nation support and for host nation requirements regarding the execution of the mission.</li> <li>i. Conducts a map reconnaissance, at a minimum, of the area of responsibility.</li> <li>j. Issues warning order to platoons.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant provides support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuations.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Operations center coordinates with the platoon(s) to conduct a screening operation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes communications with the platoon(s) and TCF to include frequencies, and call signs.</li> <li>b. Coordinates movement control measures to include                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Sectors, areas, or boundaries for subordinate elements.</li> <li>(2) Observation posts.</li> <li>(3) Screens lines (phase lines), initial and subsequent elements.</li> <li>(4) Enroute rally points, ORPs, linkup points, contact points, and check points.</li> <li>(5) Passage points, infiltration lanes.</li> <li>(6) Routes for patrols or to initial screen line, if needed.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Coordinates fire support requirements.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Communicates engagement criteria (size, type, and activity of enemy unit).</li> </ol> </li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| 4. Operations center monitors platoon(s) conduct of a screen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitors communications with platoon(s) and the TCF.</li> <li>b. Monitors movement control measures with platoon(s).</li> <li>c. Monitors fire support missions with Platoon(s).</li> </ul> 5. Operations center collects current information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives situation/spot reports.</li> <li>b. Updates company situation map.</li> <li>c. Forwards situation/spot report to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Forwards updates overlay to higher headquarters.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number                                   | Task Title   |
|--------------------|---|--|
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-326-5605                                  | Control Movement Of A Fire Team                                      |
|                    | 071-326-5611                                  | Conduct The Maneuver Of A Squad                                      |
|                    | 071-410-0019                                  | Control Organic Fires  |
|                    | 071-332-5004                                  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                                    |
|                    | 113-573-4003                                  | Encode And Decode Messages Using KTC 600(*) Tactical Operations Code |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-326-0515                                  | Select A Movement Route Using A Map                                  |
|                    | 071-326-5626                                  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order                                      |
|                    | 071-326-5630                                  | Conduct Movement Techniques By A Platoon                             |
|                    | 071-326-5705                                  | Establish An Observation Post  |
|                    | 071-326-5775                                  | Coordinate With An Adjacent Platoon                                  |
|                    | 071-329-1019                                  | Use A Map Overlay  |
|                    | 071-332-5000                                  | Prepare An Operation Overlay   |
|                    | 071-332-5021p                                 | Prepare A Situation Map  |
|                    | 071-332-5022                                  | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                        |
|                    | 113-573-8006                                  | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)                  |
| 071-332-5022p      | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP) |  |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

NONE:

**ELEMENTS:** Element HQ  
 Company  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)

**TASK:** Occupy A Site (19-2-60003)  
 (FM 100-5) (FM 101-5) (FM 24-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An MP unit staff is moving to a new location, under the control of the commander. The quartering party has arrived at the new site in advance of the main party. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The Unit HQ is secure and established at the new site. Communications with higher headquarters and with subordinate and supporting elements are maintained without interruption.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| 1. Quartering party establishes the site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assumes appropriate MOPP level prior to sweeping the site.</li> <li>b. Sweeps the site for Threat forces, NBC contamination, and other hazards.</li> <li>c. Establishes dismount point and perimeter security.</li> <li>d. Establishes communications.</li> <li>e. Identifies locations for each staff section.</li> <li>f. Improves and marks entrances, exits, and internal routes.</li> <li>g. Positions guides at RP to meet main party.</li> <li>h. Notifies convoy commander when site is prepared for arrival of main party.</li> </ul> 2. Main party moves into new site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves into identified positions according to staff section, as directed by quartering party guides.</li> <li>b. Maintains vehicle interval.</li> <li>c. Maintains security as main party moves into site.</li> <li>d. Maintains noise and light discipline.</li> <li>e. Dismounts all persons except drivers at the dismount point.</li> </ul> * 3. Commander improves security of site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigns main party personnel to security roles as staff sections are established.</li> <li>b. Identifies locations for and assigns soldiers to individual fighting positions.</li> <li>c. Ensures unit personnel prepare range cards and sector sketches.</li> <li>d. Establishes listening posts (LPs) and observation posts (OPs).</li> <li>e. Ensures unit personnel Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| <b>References</b>  | <b>Task Number</b> | <b>Task Title</b>   |
|--------------------|--------------------|---|
| STP 19-95B1-SM     | 071-326-0501       | Move As A Member Of A Fire Team   |
|                    | 191-376-4108       | Operate A Dismount Point  |
| STP 19-95B23-SM-TG | 051-191-2364       | Inspect Personnel, Equipment, And Defensive Positions For Proper Camouflage       |
|                    | 051-192-3032       | Direct Installation/Removal Of A Hasty Protective Minefield                       |
|                    | 071-331-1003       | Installation Planning And Installation Of A Platoon Early Warning System An/Trs-2 |
|                    | 191-377-4201       | Establish/Supervise A Dismount Point  |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-331-0820       | Analyze Terrain   |
| STP MP OES-CAPTAIN | 191-400-0026       | Direct The Security Of A Tactical Operations Center (TOC)                         |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Coordinate Military Police Support to River Crossing (19-2-11001)  
 (FM 19-4) (FM 90-13)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has been directed to perform river crossing operations. Platoons have deployed to their assigned areas of responsibility in support of the operation. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center ensures platoons support river crossing operations and forwards updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning order.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Evaluates the threat.</li> <li>d. Conducts a map reconnaissance of the area.</li> <li>e. Identifies time and resources available.</li> <li>f. Back briefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>g. Issues written or oral order.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant ensures support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. * Operations Sergeant coordinates with platoons for employment of river crossing support measures.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures placement of traffic control post, mobile patrols, and route signs.</li> <li>b. Establishes communications with higher headquarters.</li> <li>c. Ensures placement of holding areas on the entry and exit banks.</li> <li>d. Ensures placement of military police traffic control post locations with engineer regulating points.</li> <li>e. Ensures placement of traffic control posts at the traffic regulating line and on both sides of the crossing area.</li> <li>f. Ensures placement of temporary signs along routes from the staging area to the crossing area.</li> <li>g. Ensures existing overlay is updated.</li> <li>h. Coordinates with higher headquarters for transportation, engineer, host nation, and fire support.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations center monitors the platoon's conduct of the operation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates the collection and evacuation of enemy prisoners of war from the forward collection point.</li> <li>b. Receives situation/spot reports.</li> <li>c. Posts company situation map.</li> <li>d. Forwards situation/spot reports to higher headquarters.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title  |
|--------------------|---------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0010  | Coordinate Base Cluster Area Defense Planning       |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 191-400-0021  | Provide Security to Designated Critical Area        |
|                    | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                   |
|                    | 071-332-5021p | Prepare A Situation Map                             |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-410-0010  | Conduct A Leader's Reconnaissance                   |
|                    | 061-283-6003  | Adjust Indirect Fire                                |
|                    | 071-332-5022p | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)       |
|                    | 081-831-0101  | Request Medical Evacuation                          |
|                    | 113-573-0002  | Conduct Operations Security (OPSEC) Procedures      |
|                    | 113-573-8006  | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI) |



**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: ATTACK (19-OPFOR-1010)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy rear area combat service support base has been located by an OPFOR element. Priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars. The OPFOR element is approximately the size of two platoons.

**STANDARD:** 1. Develop an attack plan. 2. Initiate attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 3. Use covered and concealed routes to approach enemy units' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 4. Employ indirect fire to support attack. 5. Penetrate enemy defenses. 6. Destroy equipment and supplies. 7. Inflict heavy casualties. 8. Isolate the combat service support base by blocking reinforcements. 9. Force enemy units to displace. 10. Withdraw before combat service support base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**TASK: CONDUCT HASTY AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1003)**

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is moving in a wooded area when an enemy march element is seen moving along a nearby route.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Inflict casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflict damage to vehicles and equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delay enemy march element from reaching its destination for a specified period. 6. Withdraw, on order, within two minutes of ambush initiation. 7. Sustain minimum casualties. 8. Report actions to superiors.

**TASK: CONDUCT DELIBERATE AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1004)**

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is operating along an enemy main supply route. OPFOR intelligence has reported that an enemy element is conducting a road march along the route. OPFOR has set up an ambush. The march element is approximately 15 minutes from the ambush point. The OPFOR element possesses automatic weapons, antiarmor weapons, and command detonated mines. OPFOR HQ has ordered complete destruction of march element.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Force enemy march element to halt in kill zone. 4. Initiate ambush on order of OPFOR leader. 5. Kill, wound, or capture all enemy personnel, and destroy all specified vehicles and equipment in the kill zone. 6. Engage all enemy reinforcement and security elements. 7. Sustain minimum casualties from enemy forces. 8. Consolidate and withdraw from the area on order. 9. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements.

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Coordinate Military Police Support to Passage of Lines (19-2-12004)  
 (FM 19-4) (FM 7-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has been tasked to escort a unit (forward/rearward) through friendly elements. The company receives orders from higher headquarters to support a line of operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center ensures the platoons support the passage of lines operation and forwards updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Company Commander receives mission from higher headquarters.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning order.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Conducts map reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Identifies time and resources available.</li> <li>e. Prepares commander's estimate.</li> <li>f. Back briefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>g. Issues written order.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. First Sergeant ensures support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Operations center coordinates with passing unit and stationary units.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates communications.</li> <li>b. Coordinates recognition signals.</li> <li>c. Coordinates route start point.</li> <li>d. Coordinates time of passage.</li> <li>e. Coordinates passing lanes.</li> <li>f. Coordinates control measure to include TCPs, escort/guide vehicles, temporary route signs, or a combination.</li> <li>g. Coordinates transportation assets.</li> <li>h. Establishes security for assembly areas.</li> <li>i. Coordinates for EPW/Dislocated civilian evacuation with S3/S4.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Company Commander issues orders.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Approves platoon plan.</li> <li>b. Issues written or oral orders.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. Operation center monitors platoon(s) conduct during mission.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures communication with platoons and supported units.</li> <li>b. Ensures recognition signals are known and used.</li> <li>c. Ensures TCPs are operational and in the correct location.</li> <li>d. Ensures temporary route signing is emplaced.</li> <li>e. Ensures checkpoints are used to coordinate friendly movement.</li> <li>f. Ensures assembly areas where units for further action are established.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |

| <b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>   | <b>GO</b> | <b>NO-GO</b> |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| g. Ensures passage lanes along which the passing units moves to avoid stationary units and obstacles are emplaced.<br>h. Ensures routes for dislocated civilians are clear.<br><br>6. Operations center forwards current information to higher headquarters. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Receives situation/spot reports.</li> <li>Updates company situation map.</li> <li>Forwards situation/spot reports to higher headquarters.</li> <li>Forwards updates overlay to higher headquarters.</li> </ol> |           |              |

| <b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b> |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
|--|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|--------------|
| <b>ITERATION</b>                                   | <b>1</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>M</b> | <b>TOTAL</b> |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                         |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                              |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                       |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| <b>References</b>  | <b>Task Number</b> | <b>Task Title</b>   |
|--------------------|--------------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0003       | Coordinate Refugee Control Operations                                 |
|                    | 191-400-0007       | Direct The Conduct Of Maneuver And Mobility Support Operations (MMSO) |
|                    | 191-400-0012       | Plan Special and Basic Control Measures                               |
|                    | 191-400-0013       | Coordinate Main Supply Route (MSR) Enforcement                        |
|                    | 191-400-0014       | Direct Route Surveillance and Security                                |
|                    | 191-400-0015       | Plan Area Damage Control Operations                                   |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 191-400-0016       | Direct a Hasty Route Reconnaissance                                   |
|                    | 071-332-5004       | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                                     |
|                    | 071-410-0012       | Supervise Occupation Of An Assembly Area                              |
|                    | 191-377-4202       | Establish/Supervise A Traffic Control Post                            |
|                    | 191-377-4203       | Establish/Supervise A Roadblock/Checkpoint                            |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 191-379-4402       | Plan Roadblocks And Checkpoints                                       |
|                    | 191-379-4409       | Plan Establishment Of Traffic Control Post                            |
|                    | 071-332-5022p      | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                         |

## OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

### **TASK:** MAINTAIN CONTACT (19-OPFOR-1011)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR element is tactically engaged with enemy base defense forces. Enemy forces are withdrawing under pressure.

**STANDARD:** 1. Engage enemy forces decisively. 2. Advance own unit or forces as enemy withdraws. 3. Inflict maximum casualties.

### **TASK:** CONDUCT HASTY AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1003)

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is moving in a wooded area when an enemy march element is seen moving along a nearby route.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Inflict casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflict damage to vehicles and equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delay enemy march element from reaching its destination for a specified period. 6. Withdraw, on order, within two minutes of ambush initiation. 7. Sustain minimum casualties. 8. Report actions to superiors.

### **TASK:** CONDUCT DELIBERATE AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1004)

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is operating along an enemy main supply route. OPFOR intelligence has reported that an enemy element is conducting a road march along the route. OPFOR has set up an ambush. The march element is approximately 15 minutes from the ambush point. The OPFOR element possesses automatic weapons, antiarmor weapons, and command detonated mines. OPFOR HQ has ordered complete destruction of march element.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Force enemy march element to halt in kill zone. 4. Initiate ambush on order of OPFOR leader. 5. Kill, wound, or capture all enemy personnel, and destroy all specified vehicles and equipment in the kill zone. 6. Engage all enemy reinforcement and security elements. 7. Sustain minimum casualties from enemy forces. 8. Consolidate and withdraw from the area on order. 9. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements.

**ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)

**TASK:** Prepare For A Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-2-C029)  
 (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The battalion S3 has notified the HHD of a strike warning affecting the battalion headquarters' location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The HHD hardens positions and equipment and conducts radiological monitoring. All personnel use available covered positions to protect from the effects of blast and radiation.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| * 1. HHD commander reacts to warning.<br>a. Remains alert for a follow-up message that will cancel, confirm, or alter the warning.<br>b. Warns staff sections and HHD elements.<br><br>2. HHD personnel implement protective measures.<br>a. Ensure supplies, equipment, and vehicles are protected.<br>b. Take measures to protect communications equipment from electromagnetic pulse (EMP) as necessary or when possible. Calculate optimum time of exit.<br>c. Modify protective measures, if necessary, depending upon terrain, weather, and commander's specified degree of risk. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References     | Task Number  | Task Title   |
|----------------|--------------|--|
| STP 21-1-SMCT  | 031-506-1052 | Protect Yourself And Others From Chemical And Biological Injury/Contamination By Using (Entering Or Exiting) A Collective Protection Shelter |
| STP 21-24-SMCT | 031-503-2020 | Use And Perform Operator Maintenance On The Im93 Or Im147 Dosimeter And Pp1578-Series Charger  |
|                | 031-503-3008 | Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture  |
|                | 031-503-4003 | Control Unit Radiation Exposure  |

**ELEMENTS:** Company  
 MP PLATOON/SQUAD  
 Platoon HQ

**TASK:** React To Smoke Operations (03-3-C209)  
 (FM 3-50) (FM 3-50-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The threat impedes direct platoon observation by using smoke as an obscuring measure, or the platoon needs to conceal its activities from threat observation. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon exploits the threat smoke or employs organic smoke to conceal the platoon's own activities and continues the mission. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in MOPP 4.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Platoon does not allow the threat smoke to impede performance of mission. 01-5060.02-2111                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performs its mission in the presence of threat smoke.</li> <li>b. Uses threat smoke to conceal their own movements.</li> <li>c. Moves to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat's use of smoke.</li> <li>d. Considers using countersmoke to conceal their own activities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The platoon employs organic smoke grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades. (01-5080.02-2001,01-5080.02-2003, 01-5080.02-2004 ,01-5080.02-0009, 031-508-3061, 031-508-3067)                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates smoke operations with unit commander or supported unit.</li> <li>b. Determines wind direction and speed.</li> <li>c. Determines where to release smoke and where it will travel.</li> <li>d. Determines duration of smoke operations.</li> <li>e. Determines the effects of weather conditions of their smoke plan.</li> <li>f. Ensures that smoke covers a larger area than the platoon position.</li> <li>g. Requests smoke support from the supported unit (if organic systems will not accomplish the task).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The platoon uses target acquisition and guidance systems.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determines what available target and acquisition systems are effective in smoke.</li> <li>b. Requests target acquisition and guidance systems are effective in smoke.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 4. Platoon sergeant requests resupply of smoke munitions when required. (01-5080.02-0009)                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Requests smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> <li>b. Distributes smoke grenades and smoke pots.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| <b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b> |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
|--|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|--------------|
| <b>ITERATION</b>                                   | <b>1</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>M</b> | <b>TOTAL</b> |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                         |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                              |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                       |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion HQ  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Company  
 Battalion  
 PM Section  
 Division PM Operations Section

**TASK:** Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-2-C301)  
 (FM 5-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR has air, ground and space based surveillance capability to include infrared sensors. The OPFOR is not searching for the unit at a specific location. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element camouflages individual positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater distances. The element camouflages vehicles and crew served weapons to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater distances. The element is not detected by OPFOR aerial observers or space based surveillance.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. The element leader and squad leaders select concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Vehicle tracks follow terrain lines such as the edges of woods and fields.</li> <li>b. Vehicle tracks continue past park locations to some other logical spot.</li> <li>c. Use concealed routes whenever possible.</li> <li>d. All vehicles drive in the same tracks.</li> <li>e. Obliterate tracks where they turn into concealed positions.</li> <li>f. Position vehicles under natural cover or in shadows.</li> <li>g. Position vehicles so shapes will blend with surroundings.</li> <li>h. Avoid terrain features that the OPFOR can use as reference points for ground and aerial fires (hilltops and road intersections).</li> </ul> <p>2. The squads conceal vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Use natural materials to break up shapes or shadows.</li> <li>b. Blend natural materials with the surrounding area.</li> <li>c. Change natural materials when they start to wilt and remove them from the area.</li> <li>d. Cover shiny objects such as windows, mirrors, and headlights.</li> <li>e. Use nets to create shadows.</li> <li>f. Use camouflage screening systems to enhance natural materials.</li> <li>g. Keep heat sources (generators, engines, mess areas) under screening systems even when using natural concealment.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: The screening system breaks up the heat signature.</p> <p>* 3. Leaders enforce light and noise discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Use only blackout lights.</li> <li>b. Eliminate noise by muffling or masking by other noise.</li> </ul> |    |       |



| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| * 4. Leaders know when OPFOR surveillance satellites are overhead.<br>a. Receive SATRAN report from higher headquarters.<br>b. disseminate pertinent SATRAN information to subordinates.<br>c. Incorporate this information into their tactical plan. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| STP 19-95B23-SM-TG | 051-191-2364 | Inspect Personnel, Equipment, And Defensive Positions For Proper Camouflage |

#### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

- ELEMENTS:** Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 Company  
 PM Section  
 Division PM Operations Section

**TASK:** Maintain Operations Security (12-2-C332)  
 (AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 34-62)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is operating where it can be detected by the enemy. The enemy can employ EW measures and air and ground reconnaissance units. The enemy can use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, and intentions. The element prevents the enemy from learning any EEFI. The element prevents the enemy from surprising its main body.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. Leaders check or perform information security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Control information on a need-to-know basis.</li> <li>b. Prohibit fraternization with civilians (as applicable).</li> <li>c. Conduct alert, deployment preparation, and loading to minimize detection.</li> <li>d. Make sure maps contain only minimum essential information.</li> <li>e. Make inspections and gives briefings to ensure that personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal materials such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches or photographs.</li> <li>f. Sanitize all planning areas and positions before departure.</li> </ul> <p>2. The element performs camouflage discipline. (051-191-1362)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses natural concealment and natural camouflage materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground and air observation.</li> <li>b. Moves on covered and concealed routes.</li> <li>c. Covers all reflective surfaces and unit markings with non-reflective material such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick.</li> <li>d. Covers and removes all vehicle markings.</li> </ul> <p>3. The element camouflages individual positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages vehicles and crew-served weapons to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater. (051-202-1363)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Makes sure foliage is not stripped near positions.</li> <li>b. Camouflages earth berms.</li> <li>c. Make sure camouflage nets (if used) are hung properly.</li> <li>d. Avoids crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads, where possible.</li> <li>e. Erases tracks leading into the positions.</li> <li>f. Makes sure vehicles parked in shadows are moved as shadows shift.</li> <li>g. Replaces and replenishes camouflage as needed.</li> <li>h. Avoids movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>4. The element employs communications security and the company NCS enforces communications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. SOI procedures (challenge, authentication and decode, call signs, and frequencies). Monitored traffic does not reveal information to the enemy.</li> <li>b. Approved RATELO procedures.</li> <li>c. COMSEC procedures (short transmissions, lowest power settings possible, directional antennas, avoid transmission patterns, maintain radio silence) as directed.</li> <li>d. Procedures for operations during jamming.</li> <li>e. Maximum use of messenger and wire.</li> <li>f. Visual signals IAW the unit's SOP.</li> </ul> <p>5. The element employs physical security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Observation posts.</li> <li>b. Counter reconnaissance patrols.</li> <li>c. Stand-to procedures.</li> <li>d. Mines and obstacles.</li> <li>e. Ties in with adjacent units (coordination and fire).</li> <li>f. Challenge and password.</li> <li>g. Limit access into the unit area.</li> <li>h. Unit safeguards weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, classified documents, and picks up litter.</li> <li>i. Air guards.</li> </ul> <p>6. The commander and all leaders enforce noise and light discipline. (071-331-0815)</p> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |  | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References    | Task Number  | Task Title                                   |
|---------------|--------------|--|
| STP 21-1-SMCT | 071-331-0815 | Practice Noise, Light, And Litter Discipline |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Convoy Security (19-2-20004)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company in support of combat operations or SASO is directed by higher headquarters to provide convoy security for various convoys in their area of operation. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center confirms that designated convoys are provided security and provides updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning order.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Determines special requirements and equipment.</li> <li>d. Requests threat analysis.</li> <li>e. Determines commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).</li> <li>f. Conducts map reconnaissance.</li> <li>g. Issues the written order.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant ensures support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Operations center coordinates with the platoon(s) to implement convoy security.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes communications (primary/alternate frequencies).</li> <li>b. Confirms platoon(s) conduct route reconnaissance of primary and alternate routes.</li> <li>c. Establishes checkpoints.</li> <li>d. Specifies start/release point.</li> <li>e. Develops and post convoy overlay.</li> <li>f. Coordinates with battalion for host nation support.</li> <li>g. Coordinates medical support.</li> <li>h. Coordinates air support requirements.</li> <li>i. Coordinates artillery support requirements.</li> <li>j. Coordinates vehicle recovery support.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations center monitors the platoon(s) conduct security operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitors communications with platoon(s) and convoy commander.</li> <li>b. Monitors platoon(s) movement on primary and alternative routes.</li> <li>c. Monitors roadblocks and check points.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Operations center forwards information to higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives situation/spot reports from platoon(s).</li> <li>b. Consolidates information into company situation map.</li> <li>c. Updates platoon(s) status during convoy with higher headquarters.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title   |
|--------------------|---------------|--|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0017  | Plan Convoy Security Operations  |
|                    | 191-400-0022  | Direct Convoy Security Operations  |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order  |
|                    | 071-332-5000  | Prepare An Operation Overlay   |
|                    | 071-332-5001p | Prepare, Assemble, And Distribute An Operation Plan/Operation Order/Annex    |
|                    | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order  |
|                    | 071-332-5021p | Prepare A Situation Map  |
|                    | 191-377-4202p | Establish/Supervise A Traffic Control Post                                   |
|                    | 191-377-4203P | Establish/Supervise A Roadblock/Checkpoint                                   |
|                    | 191-377-4209p | Supervise Security Personnel During Convoy Of Special Weapons And Ammunition |
|                    | 191-378-4300  | Supervise Convoy Security Operations   |
|                    | 191-379-4402  | Plan Roadblocks And Checkpoints  |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 191-379-4403  | Plan For Defiles And Holding Areas   |
|                    | 191-379-4407  | Plan/Implement Convoy Security Operations                                    |
|                    | 191-379-4409  | Plan Establishment Of Traffic Control Post                                   |
|                    | 071-332-5022p | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                                |
|                    | 081-831-0101  | Request Medical Evacuation   |
|                    | 091-309-0711  | Direct Vehicle And Equipment Recovery Operations                             |
|                    | 113-573-8006p | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)                          |
|                    | 551-721-3352  | Direct Convoy Defense Operations   |

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

#### TASK: CONDUCT HASTY AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1003)

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is moving in a wooded area when an enemy march element is seen moving along a nearby route.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Inflict casualties within the designated kill zone. 4. Inflict damage to vehicles and equipment within the designated kill zone. 5. Delay enemy march element from reaching its destination for a specified period. 6. Withdraw, on order, within two minutes of ambush initiation. 7. Sustain minimum casualties. 8. Report actions to superiors.

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Security for a Conventional Ammunition Supply Point (19-2-20008)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company in support of combat operations or SASO is directed by higher headquarters to provide security for critical ammunition supply points within the company's area of responsibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Operations center ensures security is provided to ASPs and provides updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Company Commander plans for security of conventional ammunition supply point.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviews existing security measures with the ASP commander.</li> <li>b. Directs a thorough reconnaissance of the area.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with battalion S2 for threat assessment including terrorist and other threats.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with S3 for host nation support.</li> <li>e. Plans for fire support and engineer support.</li> <li>f. Coordinates PSYOPs and Civil Affairs.</li> <li>g. Directs the operations center personnel to coordinate with the platoon and monitor the security of the ASP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. First Sergeant provides support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, II, III, IV, V, VI, VIII, IX and water.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Operations Sergeant coordinates support requirements for the platoons.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintains communication with platoon.</li> <li>b. Maintains updated intelligence (threat information).</li> <li>c. Coordinates battle handover line.</li> <li>d. Coordinates special equipment requirements, for example, pyrotechnic devices for the platoon.</li> <li>e. Receives request for logistical support.</li> <li>f. Coordinates fire support requirements.</li> <li>g. Coordinates for support from MP units providing area security.</li> <li>h. Coordinates liaison with ammunition supply point.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. * Company Commander and First Sergeant monitor platoon's conduct of ASP security.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspect the tactical layout for the platoon.</li> <li>b. Observe rehearsals for response force operations.</li> <li>c. Direct improvements to security plan.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. Operations center forwards current information to higher headquarters.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives ASP perimeter overlays.</li> <li>b. Receives situation/spot report.</li> <li>c. Updates company situation map.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES                        | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| d. Forwards situation/spot reports to higher headquarters. |    |       |
| e. Forward updated overlay to higher headquarters.         |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title  |
|--------------------|---------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0010  | Coordinate Base Cluster Area Defense Planning                               |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 191-400-0021  | Provide Security to Designated Critical Area                                |
|                    | 051-191-2364  | Inspect Personnel, Equipment, And Defensive Positions For Proper Camouflage |
|                    | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order   |
|                    | 071-332-5021p | Prepare A Situation Map   |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 113-573-4003  | Encode And Decode Messages Using KTC 600(*) Tactical Operations Code        |
|                    | 061-283-6003  | Adjust Indirect Fire  |
|                    | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order   |
|                    | 071-332-5000  | Prepare An Operation Overlay  |
|                    | 071-332-5022p | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                               |
|                    | 081-831-0101  | Request Medical Evacuation  |
|                    | 113-573-8006  | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)                         |

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

#### TASK: ATTACK (19-OPFOR-1010)

**CONDITION:** The enemy rear area combat service support base has been located by an OPFOR element. Priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars. The OPFOR element is approximately the size of two platoons.

**STANDARD:** 1. Develop an attack plan. 2. Initiate attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 3. Use covered and concealed routes to approach enemy units' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 4. Employ indirect fire to support attack. 5. Penetrate enemy defenses. 6. Destroy equipment and supplies. 7. Inflict heavy casualties. 8. Isolate the combat service support base by blocking reinforcements. 9. Force enemy units to displace. 10. Withdraw before combat service support base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Conduct Deep-Water Port Security (19-2-20009)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has been directed by higher headquarters to conduct external security for a deep-water port. The company is responsible for security from the perimeter fence of the port outward. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company ensures the security of port facilities and cargo against enemy and criminal activity and civilian demonstrations.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander plans the security mission for the perimeter fence of the port outward.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviews existing security measures.</li> <li>b. Coordinate with internal security force to synchronize procedures.</li> <li>c. Conducts a thorough reconnaissance of the area.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with battalion S4 for engineer support for obstacles and barriers.</li> <li>e. Coordinates with battalion S2 for threat assessment including terrorist and other threat.</li> <li>f. Coordinates with battalion S3 for host nation support.</li> <li>g. Issues orders, to include guidance on rules of engagement.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant provides support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. * Operations Sergeant coordinates with the platoons to implement deep water port security operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures operations extend from the port perimeter outward.</li> <li>b. Ensures aggressive patrolling is conducted to detect, report, and combat levels I and II enemy threats.</li> <li>c. Ensures security over watch is provided for critical cargo moving from the ports through the rear area.</li> <li>d. Anticipates the platoons' support requirements.</li> <li>e. Develop security and evacuation plans in the event of nuclear, biological or chemical strike.</li> <li>f. Develops contingency plans to provide escorts for units departing the part area of operations.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations center personnel coordinate for support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinate fire support requirements.</li> <li>b. Coordinate with MP units providing interior security.</li> <li>c. Coordinate for support from MP units providing area security.</li> <li>d. Coordinate liaison with docked ships.</li> <li>e. Coordinate for response force personnel in the event of unforeseen situations.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |



| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| 5. * Company Commander develops security plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Plans security measures to provide early warning of ground, air attack, or NBC threat and thwart enemy or criminal activity.</li> <li>b. Plans security measures to prevent penetration of the perimeter fences including obstacle, barriers, and military working dogs.</li> <li>c. Identifies response force to assist if required.</li> </ul> 6. * Company Commander implements security operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures patrols are conducted.</li> <li>b. Ensures LP/OPs are established.</li> <li>c. Ensures defensive sectors are established.</li> <li>d. Ensures obstacles and barriers are put in place.</li> <li>e. Ensures TCPs are established.</li> <li>f. Maintains communication.</li> <li>g. Ensures rules of engagement and use of force are followed.</li> </ul> 7. Operations center personnel forward current information to higher headquarters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receive situation/spot reports from the platoons.</li> <li>b. Consolidate information into a company situation map.</li> <li>c. Forward situation/spot reports to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Forward updates overlay to higher headquarters.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title  |
|--------------------|---------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0010  | Coordinate Base Cluster Area Defense Planning                           |
|                    | 191-400-0017  | Plan Convoy Security Operations   |
|                    | 191-400-0021  | Provide Security to Designated Critical Area                            |
|                    | 191-400-0022  | Direct Convoy Security Operations                                       |
|                    | 191-400-0028  | Coordinate with Host Nation Police                                      |
|                    | 191-400-0039  | Determine Threat Potential for Physical Security                        |
|                    | 191-400-0040  | Supervise the Preparation of a Physical Security Plan                   |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 191-400-0041  | Establish Liaison with Other Military/Civilian Law Enforcement Agencies |
|                    | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                                       |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-332-5021p | Prepare A Situation Map   |
|                    | 061-283-6003  | Adjust Indirect Fire  |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order   |
|                    | 071-332-5022p | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                           |
|                    | 081-831-0101  | Request Medical Evacuation  |
|                    | 071-329-1019  | Use A Map Overlay   |

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Pipeline Security (19-2-20010)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company is directed to provide security for a critical pipeline. The commander directs the operations center to supervise platoon's conduct of pipeline security. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center confirms security is provided for the pipeline and provides updated information to the higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander analyzes the situation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conduct mission analysis.</li> <li>b. Evaluates the threat.</li> <li>c. Conducts map reconnaissance of the pipeline terrain.</li> <li>d. Identifies time and resources available.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. First Sergeant provides support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for evacuation.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. * Operation Sergeant coordinates with platoon to implement pipeline security.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establish communications with the battalion and platoons.</li> <li>b. Coordinate special equipment requirements, for example, pyrotechnic devices, aircraft.</li> <li>c. Establishes challenge and password/duress system.</li> <li>d. Determines fire support requirements.</li> <li>e. Coordinates with S2 of the petroleum group and the petroleum operation battalion.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Determines special security considerations.</li> <li>(2) Modifies OPORD to reflect necessary changes.</li> </ol> </li> <li>f. Coordinates the detection, reporting, and response to attacks on or sabotage of the pipeline.</li> <li>g. Monitors critical parts of the pipeline on a routine but random basis.</li> <li>h. Monitors ground sensors and other intrusion detection devices.</li> <li>i. Checks line pressure devices in pipeline and pumping facilities to detect breaks in the line.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations center coordinates with other agencies that have physical security responsibilities for the area through which the pipeline passes.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determines security measures already in place in order to maximize the use of personnel and equipment.</li> <li>b. Obtains intelligence information.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Operations center coordinates with other agencies for support.</li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| a. Coordinates with S5/G5 for host nation support, if available.<br>b. Coordinates for support from MP unit providing area security.<br>c. Coordinates for air surveillance of pipeline system.<br><br>6. * Operations Sergeant monitors the platoon's performance of pipeline security.<br>a. Ensures coordination with other units providing security in the sector.<br>b. Ensures platoon employs proper security measures.<br>c. Maintains communication with platoon, supported petroleum group and other units.<br><br>7. Operations center receives information from platoon.<br>a. Receives situation/spot report from platoon.<br>b. Consolidates information into company situation map.<br>c. Forwards situation/spot reports to higher headquarters..<br>d. Forwards updates overlay to higher headquarters.. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title   |
|--------------------|---------------|--|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0010  | Coordinate Base Cluster Area Defense Planning                        |
|                    | 191-400-0021  | Provide Security to Designated Critical Area                         |
|                    | 191-400-0028  | Coordinate with Host Nation Police                                   |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                                    |
|                    | 071-332-5021p | Prepare A Situation Map  |
|                    | 071-410-0010  | Conduct A Leader's Reconnaissance                                    |
|                    | 113-573-4003  | Encode And Decode Messages Using KTC 600(*) Tactical Operations Code |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order                                      |
|                    | 071-332-5000  | Prepare An Operation Overlay   |
|                    | 071-332-5022p | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                        |
|                    | 081-831-0101  | Request Medical Evacuation   |
|                    | 113-573-0002  | Conduct Operations Security (OPSEC) Procedures                       |
|                    | 113-573-8006  | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)                  |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise a Security of Designated Personnel (19-2-21001)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A combat support military police company has been directed by higher headquarters to provide security for designated personnel who will be traveling to various locations within the company area of operation. The company supervises the performance of the platoons. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center coordinates and monitors the platoon(s) activities and provides updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning order.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Evaluates the threat based on information from the S2.</li> <li>d. Conducts a reconnaissance or map reconnaissance of the area.</li> <li>e. Identifies the time and resources available.</li> <li>f. Makes a tentative plan.</li> <li>g. Issues written or oral order to the platoon(s).</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Operations center coordinates with the platoon(s) to implement the security of designated personnel operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates air support requirements.</li> <li>b. Coordinates artillery support requirements.</li> <li>c. Maintains communications (primary/alternate frequencies).</li> <li>d. Establishes checkpoints.</li> <li>e. Ensure platoon(s) conduct route reconnaissance of primary and alternate routes.</li> <li>f. Establishes liaisons with host nation police.</li> <li>g. Coordinates medical support.</li> <li>h. Coordinates special equipment requirements.</li> <li>i. Coordinates itinerary/changes to itinerary.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Operations center coordinates with echelon staffs, host authorities, and very important persons (VIPs) organization.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates itinerary/changes to itinerary.</li> <li>b. Coordinates size of official party.</li> <li>c. Coordinates briefing of unit personnel.</li> <li>d. Coordinates mission debriefing.</li> <li>e. Coordinates control measures.</li> <li>f. Coordinates actions on contact.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations center forward current information to higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives situation/spot reports from platoon(s).</li> <li>b. Consolidates information into company situation map.</li> <li>c. Forwards situation/spot report to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Forwards updated overlay to higher headquarters.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES                 | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| 5. * Company Commander plans for future operations. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title  |
|--------------------|---------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0010  | Coordinate Base Cluster Area Defense Planning       |
|                    | 191-400-0021  | Provide Security to Designated Critical Area        |
|                    | 191-400-0028  | Coordinate with Host Nation Police                  |
|                    | 191-400-0029  | Coordinate Employment of Joint U.S./U.N. Forces     |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                   |
|                    | 071-332-5021p | Prepare A Situation Map                             |
|                    | 071-332-5022p | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)       |
|                    | 191-377-4202  | Establish/Supervise A Traffic Control Post          |
|                    | 191-377-4203  | Establish/Supervise A Roadblock/Checkpoint          |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 191-379-4402  | Plan Roadblocks And Checkpoints                     |
|                    | 191-379-4409  | Plan Establishment Of Traffic Control Post          |
|                    | 061-283-6003  | Adjust Indirect Fire                                |
|                    | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order                     |
|                    | 071-332-5000  | Prepare An Operation Overlay                        |
|                    | 113-573-8006  | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI) |

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

#### TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (19-OPFOR-1013)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR dispatches small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support operations.

**STANDARD:** 1. Locate rear support bases and command and control facilities. 2. Delay and disrupt combat service support operations through probes. 3. Infiltrate combat service support bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflict light casualties. 5. Destroy supplies and equipment.

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise MP Response to Base/Base Cluster Defense (19-2-22002)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The MP company has responsibility for base/base cluster defense within its area of operations. Base operations may become disrupted by hostile elements that exceed their base capabilities. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Company operation center monitors the situation and passes on appropriate information until base resumes normal operations.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. *Company Commander receives orders to provide base defense.</li> <li>2. *Company Commander assesses the situation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues appropriate orders to platoon.</li> <li>b. Request information from higher headquarters on threat evaluation/Operational update and disseminates information to platoon(s).</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Company headquarters maintains information flow.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives information from platoons.</li> <li>b. Updates company situation map.</li> <li>c. Passes information to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Maintain communication with higher headquarters for calling out of the TCF, if necessary.</li> <li>e. Continues to pass critical intelligence to the platoons.</li> <li>f. Approves the platoons base/base defense plan.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Supply Sergeant coordinates additional logistic support for platoon.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Includes rations (class I).</li> <li>b. includes petroleum, oil, and lubricants ( class III).</li> <li>c. Includes ammunition (class V).</li> <li>d. Includes recovery items.</li> <li>e. Includes maintenance items (class IX).</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Company operation center monitors the platoon implementation of the plan.</li> <li>6. Company operation center supports the platoon reconsolidation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Commander directs the cross leveling of vehicles and equipment.</li> <li>b. Commander requests the replacement of vehicles, equipment, and personnel.</li> <li>c. First Sergeant and medical section NCO coordinate medical evacuation of casualties.</li> </ol> </li> <li>7. Company operation center advises higher headquarters of completion of mission.</li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0010 | Coordinate Base Cluster Area Defense Planning                     |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-332-5021 | Prepare/Update Enemy/Friendly Situation Map                       |
| STP 21-1-SMCT      | 113-571-1022 | Perform Voice Communications                                      |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-326-5626 | Prepare An Oral Operation Order                                   |
|                    | 071-332-5022 | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                     |
|                    | 071-430-0008 | Reorganize A Platoon Following Enemy Contact While In The Defense |
|                    | 091-309-0711 | Direct Vehicle And Equipment Recovery Operations                  |

#### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Security of Critical Sites (19-2-22004)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The higher headquarters has tasked the company to provide security for one or more critical sites. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Security plans for critical sites have been developed and approved. Platoons are conducting security IAW those plans.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander defines mission.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies the essential specified and implied tasks.</li> <li>b. Reviews constraints such as rules of engagement, rules of interaction, legal issues, and political issues.</li> <li>c. Reviews limitations such as time environment, budget, supplies, equipment, and personnel.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Company headquarters/MP operations center determines the situation and threat in coordination with the S2.</li> <li>3. Company headquarters/MP operations center supervises security plan development.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directs platoons to develop recommendations for the security plan.</li> <li>b. Reviews and revises security plan.</li> <li>c. Develops response plan.</li> <li>d. Designates personnel and equipment to support requirements through the battalion/PM S3 to include the following:                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Additional MP support or augmentation forces.</li> <li>(2) Host nation support.</li> <li>(3) Engineer support.</li> <li>(4) Close air and artillery support.</li> </ol> </li> <li>e. Submits security plan to higher headquarters.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. *Commander or platoon leader will brief the critical site OIC on the security plan.</li> <li>5. Company headquarters/MP operations center implements site security operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues company orders to platoons.</li> <li>b. Monitors the platoons' conduct of the mission.</li> <li>c. Receives reports from platoons.</li> <li>d. Consolidates information.</li> <li>e. Forwards report to higher headquarters.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |



| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0021 | Provide Security to Designated Critical Area                            |
|                    | 191-400-0028 | Coordinate with Host Nation Police                                      |
|                    | 191-400-0039 | Determine Threat Potential for Physical Security                        |
|                    | 191-400-0040 | Supervise the Preparation of a Physical Security Plan                   |
|                    | 191-400-0041 | Establish Liaison with Other Military/Civilian Law Enforcement Agencies |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-332-5000 | Prepare An Operation Overlay  |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-332-5021 | Prepare/Update Enemy/Friendly Situation Map                             |
|                    | 071-326-5626 | Prepare An Oral Operation Order   |

## OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

### TASK: CONDUCT RAID (19-OPFOR-1009)

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element has occupied an objective rally point. The element has orders to conduct a raid on a combat service support base.

**STANDARD:** 1. Surprise enemy forces. 2. Assault enemy support base and accomplish assigned tasks. 3. Destroy specified equipment and supplies. 4. Avoid decisive engagement. 5. Withdraw all personnel from objective areas within time prescribed. 6. Obtain all priority intelligence requirements from raid site. 7. Sustain only light casualties from enemy fire.

### TASK: CONDUCT AIR ATTACKS (19-OPFOR-1006)

**CONDITION:** OPFOR elements in the rear area have forwarded the positions of enemy support sites and/or the locations of road march elements. OPFOR aircraft have been dispatched to attack enemy installations or convoys.

**STANDARD:** 1. Locate command and control sites or convoys. 2. Conduct attack runs on designated targets. 3. Destroy enemy equipment, supplies, vehicles, and personnel. 4. Sustain minimum aircraft losses.

### TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (19-OPFOR-1013)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR dispatches small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support operations.

**STANDARD:** 1. Locate rear support bases and command and control facilities. 2. Delay and disrupt combat service support operations through probes. 3. Infiltrate combat service support bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflict light casualties. 5. Destroy supplies and equipment.

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Cordon and Search Operations (19-2-22006)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has been ordered by higher headquarters to supervise a cordon and search in a built-up area for insurgents and sympathizers. The local populace is in the area, and the company is not supported by local police. The company is provided someone who speaks the native language. MPs are operating under restrictive rules of engagement. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The military police company establishes a cordon of the area designated in the OPOD without being detected by the insurgents before the operation. The company captures all insurgents and enemy material in the cordon. The company minimizes the inconvenience to the local populace. The company complies with the rules of engagement. Collateral damage is minimized.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives the mission analysis.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts a mission analysis.</li> <li>b. Conducts aerial or map reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Identifies time and resources available.</li> <li>d. Backbriefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>e. Issues written or oral orders to platoon(s) to include rules of engagement.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Operations center coordinates preparation for cordon and search operations with platoons.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes communications with platoon(s).</li> <li>b. Divides the company into cordon elements, reserve elements, and search elements broken down in the following special teams:                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Handler of prisoners.</li> <li>(2) Interrogation teams.</li> <li>(3) Documentation teams (using recording with a camera).</li> <li>(4) Demolition teams.</li> <li>(5) PSYOP/Civil affairs team.</li> <li>(6) Mine detection team.</li> <li>(7) Fire support team.</li> <li>(8) Scout dog team.</li> <li>(9) Tunnel reconnaissance team.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Divides the cordoned area into zones.</li> <li>d. Assigns a search team.</li> <li>e. Establishes check points and road blocks.</li> <li>f. Processes captured insurgents and materials.</li> <li>g. Controls the company's rate of search.</li> <li>h. Directs reorganization as needed.</li> <li>i. Request close air support or helicopter support.</li> <li>j. Identify primary and alternate routes for evacuation of casualties.</li> <li>k. Conducts a rehearsal.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Operations center monitors the platoon's progress.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitors communications with platoon(s)/response force.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| b. Monitors the different elements conduct to include search, cordon and reserve.<br>c. Monitors roadblocks and checkpoints.<br>d. Monitors the processing of captured insurgents and materials.<br>e. Monitors the company's rate of searches.<br><br>4. Operations center prepares reports from the platoon(s).<br>a. Receives situations/spot reports from the platoon(s).<br>b. Updates company situation map.<br>c. Forwards situation reports to higher headquarters. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References                           | Task Number   | Task Title  |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN<br>STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 191-400-0031  | Plan Cordon and Search Operations   |
|                                      | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order   |
|                                      | 071-332-5021p | Prepare A Situation Map   |
|                                      | 191-377-4203P | Establish/Supervise A Roadblock/Checkpoint                                |
|                                      | 191-377-4205p | Supervise Processing Of EPW/CI At A Collecting Point Or Holding Area      |
|                                      | 191-378-6079p | Supervise The Escort Of EPW/CI To Collecting Point/Holding Area/Enclosure |
|                                      | 191-379-4400  | Plan/Direct Cordon And Search Operations                                  |
|                                      | 191-379-4402  | Plan Roadblocks And Checkpoints   |
|                                      | 191-379-4413  | Supervise Processing Of EPW/CI For Internment                             |
|                                      | 191-379-4450  | Supervise Handling Of Enemy Personnel And Equipment At Unit Level         |
| STP 21-24-SMCT                       | 301-337-6001  | Process Captured Materiel   |
|                                      | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order   |
|                                      | 071-332-5022p | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                             |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** Company  
 MP PLATOON/SQUAD  
 Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Radiological Survey (3-3-1041)  
 (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The NBCC has received several NBC 1 (nuclear) reports of radiological contamination within an area of operational concern. The commander needs to know the extent and intensity of contamination along a particular route within the area. Fallout has terminated but monitoring has not provided a sufficient picture of the hazard area. The NBCC orders the NBC reconnaissance platoon to conduct a radiological survey of the route within the area. Aircraft support is not available for survey operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The platoon leader identifies the route (map inspection) for survey. Prepares personnel, equipment, and vehicles. The platoon does not exceed the commander's OEG. Conducts the survey IAW time specified in the OPORD and mission briefing. The platoon leader does not violate the turnback dose rate. The platoon completes the survey, submits NBC report of findings to NBCC, moves to the designated decontamination site, and conducts required decontamination. The platoon continues its mission or return to the unit for debriefing.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. Platoon leader receives and acknowledges the OPORD and mission statement.</p> <p>* 2. Platoon leader plans and prepares for the survey.</p> <p>3. Platoon coordinates for the survey.</p> <p>4. Platoon conducts the radiological survey mission.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Platoon moves to the selected area of the survey, along a covered and concealed route, using appropriate movement techniques.</p> <p>NOTE: The platoon can conduct the survey using one of three techniques: route, point, or preselected dose rate.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. (Using the route technique) Survey teams move along the selected route taking radiation dose rate readings from the vehicle at selected intervals between checkpoints.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. (Using the point technique) Ground dose rate is obtained by dismounting from the vehicle and taking direct ground dose-rate readings or by taking the dose-rate reading inside the vehicles at points designated by the control party or the OPORD.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">d. (Using the preselected dose-rate technique) Locations of preselected dose rates are determined along side routes.</p> <p>NOTE: This technique is normally used only for resurveying old fallout contamination (after H+48 hours) where the decay is very slow. This dose rate is designated by the control party or the OPORD.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">e. Survey teams use the standard marking signs to mark the areas of contamination as directed in the OPORD or FRAGO.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">f. Survey teams use the standard marking signs to mark the areas of contamination as directed in the OPORD or FRAGO.</p> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| g. Survey teams place marking signs on the principle routes of entry into (and exit if the vicinity of the stop point) the contaminated area where dose rates is 1 centigray per hour above the ground.<br>h. Survey teams use DA Form 1971-1-R for recording data obtained from a route survey.<br>i. Survey items send results of their findings for point and preselected dose rate techniques using the NBC 4 (nuclear) report to the platoon leader.<br>* 5. Platoon leader notifies higher headquarters (NBCC) or supported units when the radiological survey is completed.<br>a. Platoon leader submits NBC 4 (nuclear) report to the NBCC over secure radio if time is critical. If time is not critical, the platoon leader handcarries the survey data to NBCC.<br>b. Platoon moves to the designated decontamination site.<br>(1) Conducts required decontamination.<br>(2) Closes and marks decontamination.<br>6. Platoon continues its mission or returns to the unit for debriefing. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| STP 19-95B1-SM     | 071-326-0608 | Use Visual Signaling Techniques While Mounted                     |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-326-5505 | Issue An Oral Operation Order                                     |
| STP 21-1-SMCT      | 071-329-1001 | Identify Terrain Features On A Map                                |
|                    | 071-329-1005 | Determine A Location On The Ground By Terrain Association         |
|                    | 071-329-1018 | Determine Direction Without A Compass                             |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 031-503-3008 | Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture                     |
|                    | 071-326-0515 | Select A Movement Route Using A Map                               |
|                    | 071-332-5000 | Prepare An Operation Overlay                                      |
|                    | 113-572-5005 | Receive A Voice United States Message Text Format (USMTF) Message |
|                    | 113-572-6006 | Read A United States Message Text Format (USMTF) Message          |
|                    | 301-348-6001 | Protect Classified Information And Material                       |

**ELEMENTS:** Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion HQ  
 Battalion  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 Company  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 Desk Team  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ  
 Company HQ  
 3 Guard Platoons

**TASK:** Prepare For A Chemical Attack (3-3-C202)  
 (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The OPFOR is using chemical warfare or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit personnel must assume designated MOPP level4 within 8 minutes, and complete its preparation efforts prior to the attack reaching their location. Personnel, equipment, food and water must be protected and the mission continued.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. Unit leader issues a warning order.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel starts defensive preparation for a chemical attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assume MOPP level 4 within eight minutes after notification.</li> <li>b. Attach M9 detector paper to their right arm and left wrist and to either the right or left ankle.</li> <li>c. Conduct MOPP field sanitation procedures.</li> <li>d. Emplace chemical agent alarm upwind of position.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel prepares fighting positions/ shelters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Use existing natural or man-made facilities as fighting positions and shelters (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels).</li> <li>b. Dig fighting positions and bunkers with over-head cover.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Fighting positions should have at least a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.</p> <p>* 4. NCOs check personnel and fighting positions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure that personnel are at MOPP level 4.</li> <li>b. Ensure individual and unit personnel fighting positions are hardened with sandbags and over-head cover.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. Unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying MOPP level as appropriate.</p> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References     | Task Number                                  | Task Title  |
|----------------|--|---|
| STP 21-24-SMCT | 031-503-4002<br>031-504-3001                 | Supervise Unit Preparation For NBC Attack<br>Supervise Positioning Of The Chemical Agent Alarm  |
| STP 3-54B1-SM  | 031-503-1030<br>031-503-3008<br>031-504-1008 | Prepare The Chemical Agent Monitor For Operation<br>Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture<br>Use And Maintain M8 Or M8a1 Alarm System |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**



- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 3 Guard Platoons  
 Company HQ  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 Desk Team  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)

**TASK:** Respond To A Chemical Attack (3-3-C203)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is tactically deployed in MOPP 2. Intelligence reports that OPFOR may use chemical warfare. Automatic alarm sounds or chemical detector paper changes causing the element to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), go immediately to MOPP 4, and utilize available shelter immediately to prevent further exposure to contamination. The element reacts to the chemical alarm within 15 seconds.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| 1. Unit OIC/NCOs ensures that element members react to the sound of the chemical agent alarm or recognize the indicators for chemical/biological attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Put on protective mask with hood within 15 seconds.</li> <li>b. Give the alarm vocal/nonvocal.</li> <li>c. Go to MOPP 4 as soon as possible.</li> <li>d. Seek additional shelter if available.</li> <li>e. Administer nerve-agent antidote (buddy aid) to other members with symptoms of nerve agent poisoning (if applicable).</li> <li>f. Administer nerve-agent antidote to self (if applicable).</li> <li>g. Check element members to ensure protective measures are followed.</li> </ul> 2. Unit personnel take additional protective measures. |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| a. Protect exposed equipment and supplies.<br>b. Monitor the area by testing with detector kits.<br>c. Use prevention procedures such as marking contaminated areas.<br><br>3. Unit personnel conduct basic skills decon.<br>a. Conduct skin decontamination.<br>b. Conduct wipedown of personal equipment with M258A1 decon kit..<br>c. Conduct operator's spraydown of equipment.<br><br>* 4. Unit OIC/NCOIC initiates unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters.<br>a. Ensures that casualties are provided medical care.<br>b. Reports casualties.<br>c. Submits NBC 1 report to higher headquarters.<br>d. Continues mission or requests movement to alternate location. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References    | Task Number  | Task Title   |
|---------------|--------------|--|
| STP 21-1-SMCT | 081-831-1000 | Evaluate A Casualty  |
|               | 081-831-1030 | Administer Nerve Agent Antidote To Self (Self-Aid)         |
|               | 081-831-1031 | Administer First Aid To A Nerve Agent Casualty (Buddy-Aid) |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 Company  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 3 Guard Platoons  
 Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 Desk Team  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 Company HQ  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)

**TASK:** Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (3-3-C208)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives orders to prepare for crossing a contaminated area. Approximate boundaries of the area are known or marked. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without receiving radiation casualties or spreading contamination.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The unit OIC/NCOIC prepares for crossing.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Directs individuals who may be exposed to radioactive dust particles to wear protective masks or cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll sleeves down, and wear gloves.</li> <li>b. Receives operational exposure guidance (OEG) from commander (turn base dose/turn back dose rate).</li> <li>c. Ensures radiac equipment operators check instruments.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. The unit prepares for crossing.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies extra shielding requirements (for example, vehicles use sandbags on the floor).</li> <li>b. Places externally stored equipment inside or covers it with available material.</li> <li>c. Starts continuous monitoring.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. The unit crosses the area.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Avoids stirring up dust.</li> <li>b. Keeps out of dust cloud by increasing the intervals and distances between vehicles.</li> <li>c. Conducts dismounted movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles should be buttoned up).</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. The unit performs operational decontamination of personnel and equipment.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checks for casualties.</li> <li>b. Reports casualties (if applicable).</li> <li>c. Conducts necessary decontamination.</li> <li>d. Evacuates casualties.</li> <li>e. Continues the mission.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References     | Task Number  | Task Title                      |
|----------------|--------------|---------------------------------|
| STP 21-24-SMCT | 031-503-3006 | Supervise Radiation Monitoring  |
|                | 031-503-4003 | Control Unit Radiation Exposure |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Operations Section  
 Detachment HQ  
 Desk Team  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion HQ  
 Battalion  
 S2 Section  
 S1 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)

**TASK:** Respond To The Residual Effects Of A Nuclear Attack (3-3-C222)  
 (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The unit mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| 1. Unit OIC/NCOIC prepares for fallout. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure individuals cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags; roll sleeves down; and wear gloves.</li> <li>b. Cover equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water containers or place them inside shelters or vehicles.</li> <li>c. Use shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| d. Ensures continuous monitoring is maintained using available NBC detection and identification equipment.<br><br>2. Designated personnel monitor fallout.<br>a. Maintain total dose information, using available total dose rate instruments.<br>b. Ensure exposure is minimized while commander determines if relocation to a clean area is necessary or possible.<br>c. Calculate optimum time of exit.<br>d. Send NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters as required, using secure means when possible.<br><br>* 3. Unit leader develops a contingency plan.<br>a. Uses guidance from higher headquarters based on the mission and previous radiation exposure.<br>b. Plans for rotation of individuals to minimize exposure. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References     | Task Number                  | Task Title  |
|----------------|------------------------------|---|
| STP 21-24-SMCT | 031-503-3006<br>031-503-4003 | Supervise Radiation Monitoring<br>Control Unit Radiation Exposure |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 Company  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 Desk Team  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)

**TASK:** Respond To The Initial Effects Of A Nuclear Attack (3-3-C223)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Unit personnel observe a brilliant flash of light and a mushroom shaped cloud. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| 1. Unit personnel take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack without warning. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Close eyes immediately.</li> <li>b. Drop to the ground in a prone position, with head toward blast, if possible. (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately drop inside the track).</li> <li>c. Keep head and face down and helmet on.</li> <li>d. Remain down until the blast wave passes and all debris stops falling.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>2. Unit personnel take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack with warning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify the best available shelter (foxholes/inside shelters).</li> <li>b. Move to the shelter.</li> <li>c. Take actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation.</li> <li>d. Keep clothing loosely fitted with headgear on at all times.</li> <li>e. Protect eyes and minimize exposed skin areas.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. Leaders reorganize the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reestablish chain of command.</li> <li>b. Reestablish communications.</li> <li>c. Send NBC 1 (Nuclear) report to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Treat casualties.</li> <li>e. Evacuate casualties.</li> <li>f. Report casualties.</li> <li>g. Evaluate facilities for protection from residual effects..</li> <li>h. Implement continuous monitoring.</li> <li>i. Submit damage assessment to higher headquarters.</li> <li>j. Initiate area damage control plan as required.</li> <li>k. Extinguishes all fires before they spread out of control.</li> </ul> <p>4. Squad leaders ensure weapon systems are operational.</p> <p>5. Soldiers right overturned vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Check loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids.</li> <li>b. Perform operator’s maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use.</li> </ul> <p>6. All personnel improve cover (if applicable).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Choose dense covering material.</li> <li>b. Cover in depth.</li> <li>c. Provide strong support.</li> <li>d. Cover as much of the opening as practical.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References    | Task Number    | Task Title                                  |                                |
|---------------|----------------|---|--------------------------------|
| STP 21-1-SMCT | 081-831-1005   | Prevent Shock                               |                                |
|               | 081-831-1007   | Give First Aid For Burns                    |                                |
|               | 081-831-1016   | Put On A Field Or Pressure Dressing         |                                |
|               | 081-831-1017   | Put On A Tourniquet                         |                                |
|               | 081-831-1025   | Apply A Dressing To An Open Abdominal Wound |                                |
|               | 081-831-1033   | Apply A Dressing To An Open Head Wound      |                                |
|               | STP 21-24-SMCT | 031-503-3006                                | Supervise Radiation Monitoring |



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

**References**

| <b>Task Number</b> | <b>Task Title</b>               |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| 031-503-4003       | Control Unit Radiation Exposure |
| 081-831-1034       | Splint A Suspected Fracture     |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)

**TASK:** Conduct Operational Decontamination (3-3-C224)  
 (FM 21-3) (FM 3-5) (STP 21-1-SMCT)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit has conducted combat operations within an NBC contaminated area. Personnel are experiencing degraded combat effectiveness. MOPP gear is in danger of being penetrated by contamination and there is little time for planning. Time and the tactical situation permit the unit to conduct MOPP gear exchange and vehicle washdown. Site security is established. Replacement MOPP gear for each soldier, all organic equipment (such as NBC detection, decon, and marketing materials; pioneer tools, communications equipment; vehicles and/or aircraft) and supplies, decon unit support, decon site and link up point locations have been established, and FM 3-5 are on hand/available. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit decontaminates their individual gear, conducts the MOPP gear exchange (utilizing the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from NBC contamination. Limit the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment, and minimize contamination on soldiers IAW FM 3-5. Reduce radiological contamination to negligible risk levels IAW FM 3-5. Reduce chemical and biological contamination until it is safe to unmask.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| 1. Contaminated unit's leader determines extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives input from staff.</li> <li>b. Establishes priorities.</li> </ul> 2. Contaminated unit submits request for decontamination to higher headquarters. Request should, as a minimum, include <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designation of the contaminated unit.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>b. Location of the contaminated unit.<br/> c. Frequency and call sign of the contaminated unit.<br/> d. Time the unit became contaminated.<br/> e. Number of vehicles/equipment, by type, that are contaminated.<br/> f. Type of contamination.<br/> g. Special requirements. (patient decon station, recovery assets, unit decon team, etc..)</p> <p>* 3. Contaminated unit coordinates with higher headquarters.<br/> a. Obtains permission to conduct decontamination and obtain necessary support.<br/> b. Selects link-up point to meet supporting units (company supply section, Power Driven Decon Equipment crew, etc).<br/> c. Coordinates with supporting elements.<br/> d. Requests replacement MOPP gear.<br/> e. Coordinates with the supporting elements to see if they will conduct a MOPP gear exchange also.</p> <p>NOTE: Vehicle washdown portion of operational decon usually uses hot soapy water.</p> <p>4. The contaminated unit's leader and NBC personnel select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring the site selected provides the following:<br/> a. Adequate overhead concealment.<br/> b. Good drainage.<br/> c. Easy access and exit (but off the main routes).<br/> d. Is near a water source large enough to support the vehicle washdown.<br/> e. Is large enough to accommodate elements involved in the operational decontamination (100 square meters for both Vehicle Washdown and MOPP gear exchange sites).</p> <p>5. Contaminated unit's Tactical Operations Center coordinates for operational decon support (battalion PDDE and crew or decon squad).<br/> a. Requests operational decon support.<br/> b. Notifies higher headquarters of the area for the operational decon.<br/> c. Establishes communications with the decon element.<br/> d. Ensures that the decon elements know the locations of the linkup and the selected decon site.</p> <p>6. Contaminated unit and supporting units move to decon site.<br/> a. Meet at link up point as coordinated.<br/> b. Contaminated unit provides security at both link up point and decon site.</p> <p>WARNING: SUPER TROPICAL BLEACH (STB) CAN SPONTANEOUSLY IGNITE IF MIXED WITH DECONTAMINATING SOLUTION 2 (DS2) OR BLISTER AGENT.</p> <p>7. Units prepare for operational decontamination.<br/> a. Set up the decon site.<br/> (1) Supporting PDDE crew sets up vehicle washdown site.<br/> (2) Contaminated unit sets up MOPP gear exchange site; no less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicles washdown site.<br/> (3) The remainder of the unit prepares its equipment for decon.<br/> b. Actions in Pre-Decon Area.<br/> (1) Vehicle crews (except for operators) dismount unless they have an operational overpressure system AND an uncontaminated interior.<br/> (2) Dismounted crews remove mud and camouflage from vehicles. The contaminated unit must provide personnel to do this if crews do not dismount.<br/> (3) Separate vehicles and dismounted crews.</p> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>( a) Ensure vehicle operators are briefed (include use of overhead cover and concealment and the proper interval).</p> <p>( b) Ensure vehicles are buttoned up (all doors, hatches, and other openings are closed or covered).</p> <p>(4) Move vehicles, with operators, to the vehicle washdown site.</p> <p>(5) Move dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit, to the MOPP gear exchange site.</p> <p>8. NCOIC of the decon unit supervises operation of the vehicle washdown site, ensuring that:</p> <p>NOTE: Normally the PDDE crew runs the Vehicle Washdown.</p> <p>a. Vehicle commanders maintain the proper interval between vehicles while processing through the washdown station.</p> <p>b. Vehicles are washed properly.</p> <p>(1) Start at top and work down.</p> <p>(2) Spray hot soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicles.</p> <p>(3) Monitor water consumption.</p> <p>c. Vehicles move to assembly area after vehicle washdown.</p> <p>9. Contaminated units conducts MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>a. Prepares equipment decontamination station (with STB dry mix).</p> <p>b. Briefs MOPP gear exchange participants on procedures to be followed.</p> <p>c. Places decontamination individual equipment on a clean surface (plastics, poncho, or other similar material).</p> <p>d. Exchanges MOPP gear.</p> <p>e. Moves soldiers to the assembly area after completion of MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>NOTE: Ensure the supporting elements have had the opportunity to use the MOPP Gear Exchange before proceeding. NOTE: The supporting PDDE crew will clean and mark the site, and report the area of contamination (using NBC 4 Report) to higher headquarters.</p> <p>10. Ensure all personnel and equipment are accounted for after the completion of the Operational Decontamination.</p> <p>11. Commander reports to higher headquarters.</p> <p>a. Completion and location of MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>b. Requests permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, the determination has been made that no agent is present.</p> <p>c. Determines the adequacy of decontamination and adjusts MOPP level as required (after obtaining approval from higher headquarters).</p> <p>12. Continues the mission.</p> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References    | Task Number   | Task Title  |  |
|---------------|---|---|--|
| STP 21-1-SMCT | 031-503-1023  | Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination When Changing Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear        |  |
|               | 031-503-1024  | Replace Canister On Your M40-Series Protective Mask   |  |
|               | 031-503-1025  | Protect Yourself From Chemical And Biological Injury/ Contamination Using Your M40-Series Protective Mask With Hood |  |
|               | 071-329-1001  | Identify Terrain Features On A Map  |  |
|               | 071-329-1002  | Determine The Grid Coordinates Of A Point On A Military Map   |  |
|               | 071-329-1008  | Measure Distance On A Map   |  |
|               | 081-831-1031  | Administer First Aid To A Nerve Agent Casualty (Buddy-Aid)  |  |
|               | 113-571-1022  | Perform Voice Communications  |  |
|               | 551-721-1352  | Perform Vehicle Preventive Maintenance Checks And Services (PMCS)   |  |
|               | STP 21-24-SMCT                                      | 031-503-3006  | Supervise Radiation Monitoring                                   |
|               |   | 031-503-3009  | Lead MOPP Gear Exchange  |
|               |   | 031-503-3010  | Supervise Employment Of Nuclear, Biological, Or Chemical Markers |
|               |   | 031-507-3003  | Supervise Hasty Decontamination                                  |
| 071-329-1004  |   | Determine The Elevation Of A Point On The Ground Using A Map  |  |
| 113-573-8006  | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI) |   |  |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 Company  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Chemical Reconnaissance (3-3-C225)  
 (FM 3-19)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is conducting operations in an area where chemical warfare has been initiated. The commander needs to determine the presence of chemical hazards in the area of operational concern. The reconnaissance element leader receives the mission that identifies priority areas. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The reconnaissance element identifies, marks, and ensures the battalion CP knows the location of all chemical agents in the assigned reconnaissance area. The location of contamination is marked and recorded within 100 meters accuracy of actual location.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. The reconnaissance element leader issues guidance to subordinate leaders.</p> <p>2. The Recon Unit Leader Begins Preparations for the Chemical Reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performs map reconnaissance of the route and specific area for reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Determines reconnaissance technique to use.</li> <li>c. Plans for decontamination following the reconnaissance operation (if decon is necessary).</li> <li>d. Coordinates for fire support.</li> <li>e. Briefs personnel on proper reporting and recording procedures.</li> <li>f. Issues Operation/FRAGO to subordinate leaders.</li> </ul> <p>3. Recon element prepares for chemical reconnaissance mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepares vehicles/equipment for chemical reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Performs precombat checks on vehicles/equipment.</li> <li>c. Loads chemical agent detection equipment.</li> <li>d. Removes all external gear/equipment not needed or required for the mission.</li> <li>e. Attaches M9 paper to troops and vehicles.</li> <li>f. Covers exposed equipment with plastic or canvas.</li> <li>g. Covers internal area of vehicles for team members who dismount vehicle.</li> <li>h. Assumes appropriate MOPP level for the reconnaissance mission.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: In order to limit MOPP degradation, MOPP analysis must be used to determine a MOPP level appropriate for tactical movement to the mission start point. The platoon reconnaissance element leader determines the point at which the element assumes MOPP4.</p> <p>4. Recon element conducts the chemical reconnaissance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses proper movement techniques (IAW METT-TC).</li> <li>b. Uses chemical agent detection equipment and chemical agent detection paper to locate contamination around and within the designated area.</li> <li>c. Maintains 25 to 100 meters between vehicles across the axis of advance, depending on the terrain.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>d. Stop vehicles at selected intervals or in areas with visual indication of a chemical attack to check for contamination.</p> <p>e. Checks the area for visual indications of chemical contamination---</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Dead/discolored vegetation.</li> <li>(2) Discolored soil.</li> <li>(3) Unusual liquid droplets.</li> <li>(4) Oily film on water.</li> <li>(5) Craters caused by bursting munitions.</li> <li>(6) Absence of insect life.</li> <li>(7) Dead animals/birds.</li> </ul> <p>f. Marks contaminated area IAW OPORD/SOP instructions.</p> <p>5. Reconnaissance element leader submits NBC 4 chemical report of findings to higher headquarters.</p> <p>* 6. Reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance recovery operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Checks personnel and vehicles for contamination.</li> <li>b. Segregates contaminated personnel and equipment (if necessary).</li> <li>c. Coordinates for operational decontamination (if necessary).</li> <li>d. Moves to the pre-selected decontamination (if necessary).</li> <li>e. Conducts operational decontamination (if necessary).</li> <li>f. Coordinates for reconstitution to include thorough decontamination (if applicable).</li> </ul> <p>7. Reconnaissance element conducts Reconnaissance recovery operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves to the designated location or returns to higher headquarters for debriefing.</li> <li>b. Moves to the pre-selected decontamination site (if applicable).</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |  | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 Desk Team  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)

**TASK:** Cross A Chemically Contaminated Area (3-3-C226)  
 (FM 3-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is enroute to a new location in support of combat operations. The designated route is established and cannot be bypassed without mission degradation. The unit is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit crosses the contaminated area suffering no chemical agent casualties.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| * 1. Element leader selects a route.<br>a. Uses NBC 5 (Chemical) report and/or recon reports to select a route.<br>b. Selects route that minimizes exposure consistent with the mission.<br>c. Obtains route clearance and approval.<br><br>2. Element prepares for crossing the area.<br>a. Assumes MOPP level 4 for crossing the area.<br>b. All drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders know route of march and/or have strip maps. |    |       |



| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| c. Ensures vehicles are buttoned up (mounted movement).<br>d. Places externally stored equipment inside or covers with available material.<br>e. Attaches M9 detector paper to personnel and vehicles to provide warning of contamination.<br><br>3. Element crosses the area.<br>a. Avoids low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation.<br>b. Conducts dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible.<br>c. Crosses area as quickly and carefully as possible.<br><br>4. Element exits the contaminated area.<br>a. Checks for casualties.<br>b. Reports casualties (if applicable).<br>c. Conducts necessary decontamination.<br>d. Continues mission. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |  | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

| References     | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|----------------|--------------|---|
| STP 21-1-SMCT  | 031-503-1014 | Identify Chemical Agents Using M8 Detector Paper          |
|                | 031-503-1030 | Prepare The Chemical Agent Monitor For Operation          |
|                | 071-329-1005 | Determine A Location On The Ground By Terrain Association |
| STP 21-24-SMCT | 031-503-3004 | Supervise The Crossing Of A Contaminated Area             |
| STP 3-54B1-SM  | 031-504-1008 | Use And Maintain M8 Or M8a1 Alarm System                  |

#### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

**TASK:** DISRUPT ENEMY MOVEMENT AND OPERATIONS USING PERSISTENT AND NONPERSISTENT CHEMICAL WEAPONS (19-OPFOR-1001)

**CONDITION:** OPFOR units deliver chemical agents by means of conventional artillery weapons or aircraft along selected routes of key bases in the rear area.

**STANDARD:** 1. Deliver chemical agents in lowly or densely wooded areas. 2. Delay movement of enemy supplies and equipment to forward areas by disrupting command and control system. 3. Restrict enemy units' movement in rear area. 4. Channel movement to pre-designated ambush areas. 5. Contaminate enemy supplies and equipment. 6. Inflict a high rate of casualties on enemy forces.

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 Platoon  
 PM Section  
 S4 Section  
 Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 Division PM Operations Section

**TASK:** Conduct A Convoy (55-2-C324)  
 (FM 55-30) (FM 9-16)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An OPORD requires the element to move and conduct operations at a new location. The OPORD provides the new location that the element must move to. Threat patrols up to platoon size and company size Threat mounted forces have been operating in the area through which the route passes. The company SOP with movement readiness levels and the current loading plans are available. The convoy may be performed during daylight or darkness, including blackout conditions. Radio and visual signals will be used for convoy control. Column may conduct halts. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company conducts the convoy and arrives at its new location by the time specified in the OPORD. Time required to conduct the convoy increases when conducting task in MOPP 4.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| * 1. Company commander conducts a map reconnaissance using all available POS/NAV and terrain analysis capabilities to include space based assets. (01-7300.75-0500)<br>a. Identifies SP.<br>b. Identifies locations of friendly units.<br>c. Identifies potential ambush sites.<br>d. Identifies check points.<br>e. Identifies sites for scheduled halts.<br>f. Identifies RP.<br><br>2. Reconnaissance party conducts a route reconnaissance utilizing all available POS/NAV and mapping capabilities available.<br>a. Wears designated MOPP gear.<br>b. Activates automatic chemical alarm. |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c. Monitors radiation monitoring devices.</li> <li>d. Verifies map information.</li> <li>e. Lists capacities of bridges and underpasses.</li> <li>f. Lists locations of culverts, ferries, fording areas, steep grades, and possible ambush sites.</li> <li>g. Prepares map overlay.</li> <li>h. Computes travel time.</li> <li>i. Prepares strip map.</li> </ul> <p>* 3. Convoy commander coordinates for required support with higher headquarters. (01-7300.75-0500)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates for MP.</li> <li>b. Coordinates for medical support.</li> <li>c. Coordinates for fire support.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for engineer support.</li> <li>e. Coordinates for maintenance contact team support.</li> <li>f. Coordinates for additional requirements.</li> </ul> <p>4. Company prepares vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performs PMCS.</li> <li>b. Corrects minor deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Reports major deficiencies.</li> <li>d. Hardens vehicles using sandbags and/or other authorized materials.</li> <li>e. Covers unit identification markings on vehicles and personnel.</li> <li>f. Covers or removes reflective surfaces.</li> <li>g. Places antennas at lowest height.</li> <li>h. Turns radio volumes and squelches to lowest setting consistent with operational requirements.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. Convoy commander organizes convoy.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigns cargo vehicle positions.</li> <li>b. Assigns control vehicles without setting a pattern.</li> <li>c. Assigns recovery vehicle(s) position.</li> <li>d. Assigns hardened vehicle(s) near the head of the convoy.</li> <li>e. Assigns passenger locations.</li> <li>f. Assigns air guards.</li> <li>g. Organizes trail party element.</li> <li>h. Provides vehicle position listings to trail party leader.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. Convoy commander briefs convoy personnel. (01-7300.75-0500)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefs strip maps to each vehicle driver.</li> <li>b. Briefs convoy chain of command.</li> <li>c. Briefs convoy route.</li> <li>d. Prescribes the rate of march and catch-up speed.</li> <li>e. Briefs convoy intervals.</li> <li>f. Identifies scheduled halts.</li> <li>g. Briefs accident and breakdown procedures.</li> <li>h. Briefs immediate action security measures.</li> <li>i. Briefs blackout condition procedures.</li> <li>j. Identifies location of medical support.</li> <li>k. Identifies location of maintenance support.</li> <li>l. Briefs communication procedures.</li> <li>m. Provides location and identification of destination.</li> </ul> <p>7. Convoy crosses SP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Crosses at specified time.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>b. Verifies the vehicles that have crossed the SP.<br/>                     c. Forwards SP crossing report to the convoy commander when the entire unit has passed the SP.</p> <p>* 8. Convoy commander provides convoy information to higher headquarters.<br/>                     a. Reports SP crossing time.<br/>                     b. Reports checkpoint(s) clearance when crossed.<br/>                     c. Reports data that conflicts with maps.<br/>                     d. Employs correct SOI codes in all transmissions.<br/>                     e. Reports RP crossing time.</p> <p>9. Convoy maintains march discipline.<br/>                     a. Maintains designated march speed.<br/>                     b. Maintains proper vehicle interval.<br/>                     c. Crosses checkpoints as scheduled.<br/>                     d. Reacts correctly to convoy commander's signals.<br/>                     e. Maintains security throughout movement and during halts.</p> <p>10. Company conducts scheduled halt(s).<br/>                     a. Stops column at prescribed time.<br/>                     b. Maintains prescribed vehicular interval.<br/>                     c. Moves vehicles off road.<br/>                     d. Establishes local security.<br/>                     e. Performs PMCS.<br/>                     f. Inspects vehicle loads.<br/>                     g. Departs at specified times.</p> <p>11. Company conducts unscheduled halt(s).<br/>                     a. Alerts march column.<br/>                     b. Reports stoppage to higher headquarters.<br/>                     c. Maintains prescribed vehicular interval.<br/>                     d. Establishes local security.<br/>                     e. Reports resumption of march to higher headquarters.</p> <p>12. Convoy moves under blackout conditions.<br/>                     a. Provides visual adjustment period.<br/>                     b. Prepares vehicles for blackout conditions.<br/>                     c. Maintains prescribed vehicle distances.<br/>                     d. Wears night vision goggles (specified personnel).<br/>                     e. Wears regular eye protection goggles.<br/>                     f. Employs ground guides during poor visibility periods.</p> <p>13. Trail party recovers disabled vehicles.<br/>                     a. Inspects disabled vehicle.<br/>                     b. Repairs disabled vehicle, when possible.<br/>                     c. Tows vehicles.<br/>                     d. Reports vehicle status to convoy commander.</p> <p>14. Convoy moves through urban areas.<br/>                     a. Identifies weight, height, and width restrictions.<br/>                     b. Employs close column formation.<br/>                     c. Obeys traffic control directions.<br/>                     d. Employs direction guides at critical intersections.</p> <p>15. Convoy crosses RP.<br/>                     a. Crosses at specified time.<br/>                     b. Verifies the vehicles that have crossed the RP.</p> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES                 | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| c. Forwards crossing report to higher headquarters. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title                        |
|--------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| STP MP OES-CAPTAIN | 191-400-0022 | Direct Convoy Security Operations |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Route Regulation Enforcement (19-2-12002)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company is directed by higher headquarters to conduct route regulation enforcement. The Company Commander directs the operations center to supervise route regulation enforcement operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center monitors traffic to ensure unimpeded traffic flow throughout the company area of operations.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives a mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning order.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Conducts map reconnaissance of the area.</li> <li>d. Identifies time and resources available.</li> <li>e. Back briefs headquarters.</li> <li>f. Issues written or oral orders to the platoon(s) to include rules of engagement.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant ensures support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuations.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. * Operations Sergeant coordinates with platoon(s) to conduct regulation enforcement operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Plan situation map to show locations of TCPs mobile patrols, temporary signs, holding areas, roadblocks, checkpoints, and defiles.</li> <li>b. Coordinates from the highway transportation department or other circulation control agencies for current traffic plans.</li> <li>c. Coordinates for internal recovery operations.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for host nations support.</li> <li>e. Establishes a communication plan for the company to include retrain sites.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations center monitors with platoon(s) to conduct route regulation enforcement operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures situation map is updated to show locations of TCPs, mobile patrols, temporary signs, holding areas, roadblocks, checkpoints, and defiles.</li> <li>b. Ensures all traffic plans from the highway transportation department or other circulation control agencies are current.</li> <li>c. Ensures route classification is specified according to supervised, dispatched, reserved, and prohibited routes.</li> <li>d. Ensures platoons are informed of expected flow (by classification) through their area of operations.</li> <li>e. Ensures traffic moves along specified routes according to classification.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Operations center forwards current information to higher headquarters.</li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| a. Receives situation/spot reports.<br>b. Updates company situation map.<br>c. Forwards situation/spot reports to higher headquarters.<br>d. Forwards updated overlay to higher headquarters.<br><br>6. * Company Commander prepares for future operations. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title  |
|--------------------|---------------|---|
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                                       |
|                    | 071-332-5021  | Prepare/Update Enemy/Friendly Situation Map                             |
|                    | 191-377-4203P | Establish/Supervise A Roadblock/Checkpoint                              |
|                    | 191-377-4204p | Supervise The Establishment And Operation Of A Defile And Holding Areas |
|                    | 191-379-4402  | Plan Roadblocks And Checkpoints   |
|                    | 191-379-4403  | Plan For Defiles And Holding Areas                                      |
|                    | 191-379-4409  | Plan Establishment Of Traffic Control Post                              |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 191-379-4412  | Plan Straggler Control Operations                                       |
|                    | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order   |
|                    | 071-332-5000  | Prepare An Operation Overlay  |
|                    | 071-332-5022p | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                           |
|                    | 081-831-0101  | Request Medical Evacuation  |
|                    | 091-309-0711  | Direct Vehicle And Equipment Recovery Operations                        |
|                    | 113-573-8006p | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)                     |

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

#### TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (19-OPFOR-1005)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular, and/or irregular elements in the enemy rear area along main supply routes and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** 1. Set up well-concealed locations. 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected targets. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being detected. 6. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Route Signing (19-2-12003)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company is directed by higher headquarters to conduct route signing operations of a mounted task through the company's area of operation. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center confirms routes are signed and updated overlay is provided to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Company Commander receives mission from higher headquarters.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning order.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Identifies time and resources available.</li> <li>d. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>e. Back briefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Issues written or oral orders.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. First Sergeant ensures support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Operations Sergeant coordinates with the platoon(s) to implement route signing operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes communications.</li> <li>b. Plans sign placement to support assigned mission.</li> <li>c. Specifies location and types of signs.</li> <li>d. Coordinates platoon(s) support requirements.</li> <li>e. Establishes reference points.</li> <li>f. Coordinates for host nation support.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Operations center monitors platoon(s) conduct during the route signing operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures communications are established with platoon(s).</li> <li>b. Ensures correct locations and signs are emplaced.</li> <li>c. Ensures coordinations are made for support and resupply of signs ( if needed).</li> <li>d. Ensures reference points are known.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. Operations center forwards current information to higher headquarters.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives situation/spot reports.</li> <li>b. Updates company situation map.</li> <li>c. Forwards situation/spot reports to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Forwards updated overlay to higher headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>6. * Company Commander prepares for future operations.</li> </ul> |    |       |



| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title  |
|--------------------|---------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0007  | Direct The Conduct Of Manuever And Mobility Support Operations (MMSO) |
|                    | 191-400-0012  | Plan Special and Basic Control Measures                               |
|                    | 191-400-0013  | Coordinate Main Supply Route (MSR) Enforcement                        |
|                    | 191-400-0014  | Direct Route Surveillance and Security                                |
|                    | 191-400-0015  | Plan Area Damage Control Operations                                   |
|                    | 191-400-0016  | Direct a Hasty Route Reconnaissance                                   |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-326-5505p | Issue An Oral Operation Order   |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-326-0515  | Select A Movement Route Using A Map                                   |
|                    | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order                                       |
|                    | 071-332-5000  | Prepare An Operation Overlay  |
|                    | 071-332-5022p | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                         |
|                    | 081-831-0101  | Request Medical Evacuation  |
|                    | 113-573-8006  | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)                   |

#### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Dislocated Civilian Control Operations (19-2-13001)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company in support of combat, stability, or support operations is directed by higher headquarters to provide dislocated civilian control operations. The Company Commander directs the company operations center to supervise the platoon conduct of dislocated civilian control operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center coordinates platoon activities and provides updated information to higher headquarters. Dislocated civilians are treated IAW the Geneva Convention and agreements between the U.S. and host nations. Dislocated civilians should be diverted from routes and areas when they might interfere with the U.S. and or allied military operations.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives mission from higher headquarters                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning order.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Conducts reconnaissance or map reconnaissance of the area.</li> <li>d. Identifies the time and resources available.</li> <li>e. Back briefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Issues written or oral orders.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. *First Sergeant ensures support requirements                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support activities.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuations.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Operations center personnel monitor the platoon's conduct of dislocated civilian control operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure communications are established.</li> <li>b. Coordinate with higher headquarters for dislocated civilian control operations support.</li> <li>c. Coordinate fire support requirements.</li> <li>d. Maintain updated overlay and changes to the plan.</li> <li>e. Coordinate with movement control center for anticipated operations in areas of concern.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations center forwards current information to higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives situation/spot reports from platoon(s).</li> <li>b. Consolidates information into company situation map.</li> <li>c. Forwards situation/spot report to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Forwards updated overlay to higher headquarters.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. * Company Commander plans for future operations.</li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0003 | Coordinate Refugee Control Operations               |
|                    | 191-400-0012 | Plan Special and Basic Control Measures             |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-326-5505 | Issue An Oral Operation Order                       |
|                    | 071-332-5021 | Prepare/Update Enemy/Friendly Situation Map         |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-329-1019 | Use A Map Overlay                                   |
|                    | 071-332-5000 | Prepare An Operation Overlay                        |
|                    | 081-831-0101 | Request Medical Evacuation                          |
|                    | 113-573-8006 | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI) |

#### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

##### TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (19-OPFOR-1005)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular, and/or irregular elements in the enemy rear area along main supply routes and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** 1. Set up well-concealed locations. 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected targets. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being detected. 6. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Straggler Control Operations (19-2-13002)  
 (FM 19-4) (FM 8-35)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has been directed to provide straggler control operations in their area of responsibility. The company commander directs the operation center to supervise the platoon's straggler control operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center coordinates platoon(s) activities and provides updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company commander receives mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning orders.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Conducts reconnaissance or map reconnaissance of the area.</li> <li>d. Identifies the time and resources available.</li> <li>e. Back briefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Issue written or oral orders.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant ensures support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support activities.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuations.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. * Operations Sergeant coordinates support requirements for the platoons.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates for communications.</li> <li>b. Coordinates special equipment requirements to include straggler control posts.</li> <li>c. Coordinates fire support, if necessary.</li> <li>d. Coordinate for host nation support.</li> <li>e. Coordinate with outside organizations for return of stragglers to unit control.</li> <li>f. Coordinates for medical and transportation assets for collection point.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations center personnel monitor the platoon's conduct of straggler control operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure communications are established.</li> <li>b. Maintain updated overlays and changes to the plan.</li> <li>c. Receive situation/spot reports from the platoon(s) to include medical and transportation requests.</li> <li>d. Consolidate information into company situation map.</li> <li>e. Forward situation/spot reports to higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Forward updated overlays to higher headquarters.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

| References                           | Task Number   | Task Title  |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN<br>STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 191-400-0005  | Plan Straggler Control Operations                   |
|                                      | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                   |
|                                      | 071-332-5021p | Prepare A Situation Map                             |
|                                      | 071-326-5505  | Issue An Oral Operation Order                       |
|                                      | 191-379-4412  | Plan Straggler Control Operations                   |
| STP 21-24-SMCT                       | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order                     |
|                                      | 071-329-1019  | Use A Map Overlay                                   |
|                                      | 071-332-5000  | Prepare An Operation Overlay                        |
|                                      | 071-332-5022  | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)       |
|                                      | 081-831-0101  | Request Medical Evacuation                          |
|                                      | 113-573-8006  | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI) |

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

#### TASK: CONDUCT SNIPER OPERATIONS (19-OPFOR-1005)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR has assigned snipers, regular, and/or irregular elements in the enemy rear area along main supply routes and near support sites.

**STANDARD:** 1. Set up well-concealed locations. 2. Engage vehicle drivers or personnel on foot with short bursts of semiautomatic fire. 3. Kill or wound selected targets. 4. Prevent position from being discovered by enemy forces. 5. Evacuate the area without being detected. 6. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements to OPFOR HQ.

#### TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (19-OPFOR-1013)

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR dispatches small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support operations.

**STANDARD:** 1. Locate rear support bases and command and control facilities. 2. Delay and disrupt combat service support operations through probes. 3. Infiltrate combat service support bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflict light casualties. 5. Destroy supplies and equipment.

#### TASK: DISRUPT EPW/CI OPERATIONS (19-OPFOR-1014)

**CONDITION:** OPFOR soldiers are captured.

**STANDARD:** OPFOR soldiers escape or retain weapons and documents of military intelligence value. 1. Prevent successful search. 2. Maintain unit integrity. 3. Plan escape. 4. Delay movement to nearest collecting point. 5. Prevent safeguarding of EPW's in order to cause embarrassment to the U.S.

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 Detachment HQ  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Division PM Operations Section

**TASK:** Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-2-C307)  
 (FM 44-8) (FM 44-30) (FM 5-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Element is tactically employed. Hostile aircraft have been operating in the general area. Element weapons control status is hold. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The element is not detected by enemy aircraft.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| 1. The element uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position. (01-0401.00-0004)<br>a. Uses all available resources (camouflage cover, concealment, and dispersion to hide the element and limits its vulnerability.<br>b. Covers or shades shiny items, particularly windshields and optics.<br>c. Establishes and rehearses air attack alarms.<br>d. Disperses vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to air attack.<br>e. Constructs field fortifications with organic equipment to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment.<br>f. Mans OPs (daytime or nighttime) to provide warning of approaching aircraft.<br>g. Establishes a listening watch on the air defense early warning net if equipment is available and operational.<br><br>2. The element uses passive air defense measures in a convoy.<br>a. Convoy commander briefs all element personnel.<br>b. Camouflages vehicles and equipment before moving out.<br>c. Selects column interval based on instructions, mission, and terrain.<br>d. Alternates individual and crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover front, rear, and flanks (avenues of approach). |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| e. Assigns soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees.<br>f. Visually identifies threat aircraft.<br>g. Reports all aircraft actions to higher headquarters.<br>h. Establishes and rehearses air attack alarms.<br><br>3. The element uses passive air defense measures when the element is occupying or displacing.<br>a. Maintains vehicle interval specified in the movement order.<br>b. Staggers vehicles to avoid linear patterns.<br>c. Assigns air guards to sectors of search that cover 360 degrees and maintains coverage until element completes movement.<br>d. Visually identifies threat aircraft.<br>e. Reports all aircraft actions to higher headquarters.<br>f. Establishes vehicle order of precedence. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 051-191-2364 | Inspect Personnel, Equipment, And Defensive Positions For Proper Camouflage |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Provide Food Service Support (10-2-C317)  
 (AR 40-5) (FM 10-23) (FM 10-23-1)  
 (FM 21-10) (FM 21-10-1) (FM 63-2)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Elements are requesting field feeding. Field kitchen area is set up and rations and water are picked up. Additional rations are requested. Unit strength reports are available. Food and water may be transported to satellite areas. Disposal facilities have been prepared. NBC attacks and threat forces intrusions can occur during field kitchen operations. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit provides food service support IAW field feeding plan, TSOP and commander's guidance.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Food Operations Sergeant plans food service support.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verifies strengths of all supported units.</li> <li>b. Requests require amount of subsistence.</li> <li>c. Prepares personnel work schedules.</li> <li>d. Assigns duties to all food service personnel.</li> <li>e. Prepares production schedule, as required.</li> <li>f. Coordinates distribution of food to remote areas with supported units.</li> <li>g. Develops NBC decontamination procedures for equipment, supplies, and personnel.</li> <li>h. Coordinates food service personnel defensive duties unit CP.</li> <li>i. Requests kitchen mess attendants support from supported units.</li> <li>j. Enforces safety procedures.</li> <li>k. Enforces environmental stewardship measures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Food Operations Sergeant supervises field kitchen operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes operational hours as prescribed by the field feeding plan and commander's guidance or both.</li> <li>b. Assigns work schedules consistent with personnel availability and meal schedules.</li> <li>c. Monitors equipment operations, maintenance, and safety for compliance with appropriate TMs and TSOP.</li> <li>d. Coordinates additional supply requests with unit supply facility.</li> <li>e. Forwards food service personnel and equipment status reports to CP.</li> <li>f. Forwards periodic inspections of personnel and equipment for proper operations and personal hygiene.</li> <li>g. Monitors employment of preventive medicine measures for compliance with field sanitation policies and procedures in the TSOP.</li> <li>h. Supervises decontamination of contaminated equipment, supplies, and personnel.</li> <li>i. Enforces safety procedures.</li> <li>j. Enforces environmental stewardship measures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Food service personnel pick up and store subsistence items.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspect vehicle for cleanliness and proper dunnage.</li> <li>b. Inspect subsistence items for condition and quantity.</li> <li>c. Prepare shortages, overages, and unsatisfactory subsistence listings.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |



| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Sign required documentation.</li> <li>e. Transport subsistence items from Class I point to unit field location.</li> <li>f. Store subsistence items IAW security measures and appropriate directives.</li> <li>g. Wash packaged or canned food after NBC attack.</li> <li>h. Employ safety procedures.</li> <li>i. Employ environmental stewardship measures.</li> </ul> <p>4. Food service personnel prepare meals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspect field kitchen equipment using appropriate TMs for proper operations.</li> <li>b. Employ personal hygiene measures.</li> <li>c. Perform preliminary food preparation procedures.</li> <li>d. Prepare menu items according to production schedule, when applicable.</li> <li>e. Employ field sanitation measures.</li> <li>f. Prepare food for transport.</li> <li>g. Employ safety measures.</li> <li>h. Employ environmental stewardship measures.</li> <li>i. Inspect insulated food containers and beverage dispensers to ensure that they are preheated/prechilled.</li> <li>j. Inspect insulated food containers and beverage dispensers to ensure that the food is properly packed for remote feeding.</li> <li>k. Inspect that all items to support remote feeding are assembled and packed.</li> </ul> <p>5. Food service personnel issue Class I to unit representative (1SG/Supply Sergeant) in maneuver battalions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verify headcount with 1 SG/Supply Sergeant.</li> <li>b. Issue prepared food in insulated food containers.</li> <li>c. Issues beverages in beverage dispensers.</li> <li>d. Issues sanitized serving utensils, plates, cups, flatware, and condiments to support the meal.</li> <li>e. Employ safety procedures.</li> <li>f. Employ environmental stewardship protective measures.</li> </ul> <p>6. Food service personnel/unit personnel (depending on the method of feeding) serve meals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employ personal hygiene measures.</li> <li>b. Set up serving line as dictated by the tactical situation.</li> <li>c. Inspect mess kits (if used) to ensure they are sanitized prior to serving.</li> <li>d. Employ portion control.</li> <li>e. Maintain food at proper temperature.</li> <li>f. Replenish food items.</li> <li>g. Destroy opened food after NBC attack.</li> <li>h. Employ safety measures.</li> <li>i. Employ environmental stewardship measures.</li> </ul> <p>7. Food service personnel maintain equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Perform before, during, and after operations PMCS on assigned equipment.</li> <li>b. Maintain temperatures of wash and rinse water on wash line.</li> <li>c. Clean cooking equipment.</li> <li>d. Sanitize cooking equipment.</li> <li>e. Store clean equipment to allow air-drying.</li> <li>f. Employ safety procedures.</li> <li>g. Employ environmental stewardship measures.</li> </ul> <p>8. Food service personnel perform waste disposal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Initiate effective trash management procedures.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| b. Perform liquid waste disposal.<br>c. Perform solid waste disposal.<br>d. Clean vehicle thoroughly with prescribed cleaning agents.<br>e. Sanitize vehicles thoroughly with prescribed cleaning agents.<br>f. Employ field sanitation measures.<br>g. Employ safety procedures.<br>h. Employ environmental stewardship measures. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |  | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** Detachment HQ  
 Company  
 Company HQ  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)

**TASK:** Perform Unit Mortuary Affairs Operations (10-2-C318)  
 (FM 10-63) (FM 3-4) (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit has sustained fatalities. Unit may have the capability of performing an air reconnaissance. Some remains may be contaminated. The higher HQ TSOP and OPORD are available. The task is performed by non-MA personnel. The commander has assigned search and recovery team leader(s) and personnel. Temporary interment are authorized by the geographical combatant commander. Note: At MOPP level 4 only those tasks deemed mission essential by the commander are performed. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Search, recovery, evacuation, and emergency burial operations are performed IAW the TSOP and OPORD. At MOPP 4, these activities are curtailed.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Search and recovery team leader(s)/NCOIC prepare for the search.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Perform a map, terrain, or aerial reconnaissance of the search area.</li> <li>b. Identify additional support requirements.</li> <li>c. Request additional support requirements from higher HQ staff element.</li> <li>d. Identify search pattern to be used.</li> <li>e. Coordinate NBC and EOD assistance with higher HQ staff element.</li> <li>f. Coordinate security of search area with higher HQ staff element.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Search and recovery team leader(s) supervise the search, recovery, and evacuation operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Brief search and recovery team(s) on operational procedures.</li> <li>b. Issue personal effects bags, human remains pouches, if available, and NBC agent tags.</li> <li>c. Assign areas of search to each team.</li> <li>d. Assign a portion of the search area to an individual team member.</li> <li>e. Monitor search and recovery team(s) operations for compliance with TSOP, OPORD, and commander's guidance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Search and recovery team(s) conduct the search.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Search assigned areas for remains and personal effects.</li> <li>b. Mark terrain locations of remains.</li> <li>c. Prepare recovery site sketch indicating locations where remains and personal effects were found.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>4. Search and recovery team(s) recovers remains.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspect immediate area for booby traps and NBC contaminants.</li> <li>b. Perform procedures for tentative identification.</li> <li>c. Attach to contaminated remains a tag marked with a large "C".</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Remains found in a contaminated area are to be handled IAW procedures set forth in FM 10-63 and taken to the MA decontamination collection point.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Attach personal effects to remains.</li> <li>e. Shroud remains with available materials.</li> <li>f. Prepare a sketch of the recovery site showing major landmarks.</li> <li>g. Prepare a map overlay of the recovery site.</li> <li>h. Coordinate evacuation of recovered remains to collection points higher HQ staff element.</li> <li>i. Forward SITREP IAW TSOP to higher HQ staff element.</li> </ul> <p>5. Search and recovery team(s) evacuate remains.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verify personal effects are attached to remains.</li> <li>b. Transport remains to a designated Mortuary Affairs collection point in a covered vehicle or aircraft.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: Remains should not be transported in ambulance.</p> <p>* 6. Search and recovery team leader supervises temporary internment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify specific burial site in coordination with higher HQ staff element..</li> <li>b. Supervise marking of grave sites IAW FM 10-63, TSOP, and current directives.</li> <li>c. Supervise the burial of all recovered remains and their personal effects.</li> <li>d. Report burial data to BCOC.</li> </ul> <p>7. Search and recovery team(s) perform emergency burials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepare the interment site(s) IAW TSOP and current directives.</li> <li>b. Mark all grave sites.</li> <li>c. Inter U.S. , Allied, and enemy forces remains and personal effects in separate rows.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References    | Task Number  | Task Title                          |
|---------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| STP 21-1-SMCT | 101-515-1900 | Perform Mortuary Affairs Operations |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** Detachment HQ  
 S4  
 Company  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)

**TASK:** Provide Unit Supply Support (10-2-C320)  
 (DA Pam 710-2-1) (AR 710-2) (FM 3-4)  
 (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Unit HQ is receiving requests for supplies from subordinate elements. Equipment and supplies are arriving through supply channels, but additional supplies may be required. Extra small arms and ammunition are stored in the supply area. The unit TSOP and higher HQ OPORD are available. Supply support area is a continuous task that is performed simultaneously with other support and operational tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Equipment and supplies are distributed without interfering with mission requirements as established by the TSOP and OPORD. At MOPP 4, unit supply support is reduced to minimum essential actions.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Commander directs unit supply operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspects supply records and status to ensure compliance with supply regulations, directives, and TSOP.</li> <li>b. Directs inventories of supplies and equipment to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Inspects unit equipment, weapons, and ammunition storage areas for compliance with supply regulations, directives, and TSOP.</li> <li>d. Directs issue of supplies and equipment IAW higher HQ guidance and TSOP or both sustainment controls.</li> <li>e. Forwards supply, weapons, and small arms ammunition requirements to higher HQ staff element.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. Supply Sergeant supervises unit supply.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspects supply status to determine total assets.</li> <li>b. Conducts inventories to calculate assets on hand.</li> <li>c. Develops supply storage plans.</li> <li>d. Monitor supply transactions to ensure compliance with established supply procedures.</li> <li>e. Supervises control of weapons and ammunition.</li> <li>f. Prepares input to Material Condition Status Reports.</li> <li>g. Enforces safety procedures.</li> <li>h. Enforces environmental stewardship measures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. Supply personnel requests additional supplies.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates requirements with elements.</li> <li>b. Calculates resupply requirements.</li> <li>c. Records requests on appropriate document register.</li> <li>d. Forwards resupply requests to higher HQ staff element.</li> </ul> <p>4. Supply personnel receives supplies.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Inspects incoming supplies for quantity and condition.</li> <li>b. Records receipt on appropriate document register.</li> <li>c. Stores supplies IAW storage plans.</li> <li>d. Notifies requesting element of availability of supply for issue.</li> </ul> <p>5. Supply personnel issues supplies.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Processes supply requests IAW appropriate regulations, directives, and TSOP.</li> <li>b. Prepares transaction documents IAW appropriate regulations, directives, and TSOP.</li> <li>c. Issues supplies as prescribed by commander's guidance.</li> <li>d. Maintains prescribed copies of transactions IAW appropriate regulations and directives.</li> </ul> <p>6. Supply personnel maintains small arms and ammunition.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Controls stored weapons and ammunition IAW appropriate regulations and command policies.</li> <li>b. Requests ammunition resupply from S4 Section.</li> <li>c. Performs unit-level maintenance on small arms.</li> <li>d. Forwards weapons beyond organizational repair capabilities to support maintenance elements.</li> <li>e. Employ safety procedures.</li> <li>f. Employs environmental stewardship protective procedures.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 Company  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)

**TASK:** Maintain Unit Strength (12-2-C201.19-1201)  
 (DA Pam 600-8-1) (AR 600-8-1) (FM 12-13-1)  
 (FM 12-15) (TC 12-16) (TC 12-6)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Unit is engaged in combat. Personnel losses and gains have occurred. Unit is equipped with the TACCS. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Personnel status report (PSR) is prepared daily and required SIDPERS changes are made.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Headquarters element collects strength information from all sections.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Logs SITREP and other personnel information.</li> <li>b. Collects other personnel strength information from the TOC and servicing aid station.</li> <li>c. Verifies strength data.</li> <li>d. Corrects and completes data.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Headquarters element updates the command and control strength reporting system (C2SRS).                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Posts battle roster.</li> <li>b. Inputs individual changes.</li> <li>c. Initiates casualty feeder reports.</li> <li>d. Posts commander's narrative guidance to PSR and personnel requirements report (PRR).</li> <li>e. Prints casualty feeder reports, PSR, and PRR.</li> <li>f. Creates TACCS floppy diskette for C2SRS.</li> <li>g. Prints updated battle roster as required.</li> <li>h. Reconciles C2SRS and TACCS personnel file after download from personnel automation section.</li> <li>i. Prepares letters of condolence and sympathy.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Headquarters element Processes replacements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts unit welcome/orientation briefing.</li> <li>b. Reviews a copy of soldier's orders.</li> <li>c. Signs soldiers into unit using DA Form 647 (Personnel Register).</li> <li>d. Collects medical and dental records.</li> <li>e. Forwards medical and dental records to the servicing medical unit.</li> <li>f. Inspects critical clothing and equipment for shortages.</li> <li>g. Coordinates the issue of needed items.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>h. Adds names to battle roster.</li> <li>i. Completes DA Form 3955 (Change of Address and Directory Card).</li> <li>j. Forwards DA Form 3955 to servicing postal activity.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. The unit sergeant/commander forwards casualty data.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviews casualty feeder reports for accuracy and completeness with data entered on DA Form 1594 (Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log).</li> <li>b. Reconciles casualty log with strength accounting data.</li> <li>c. Corrects any deficiencies.</li> <li>d. Forwards casualty feeder reports to servicing personnel service company.</li> </ul> <p>* 5. Unit sergeant disseminates strength information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Briefs commander on unit strength and replacement status.</li> <li>b. Forwards personnel SITREP and DA Forms 1155 (Witness Statement on Individual) and 1156 to higher headquarters.</li> <li>c. Informs higher headquarters staff and subordinate sections of projected replacements.</li> </ul> <p>* 6. Unit commander performs strength management functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Performs cross leveling.</li> <li>b. Verifies combat critical personnel requirements.</li> <li>c. Reviews and approves strength management reports.</li> <li>d. Spot checks strength information processing.</li> <li>e. Briefs superiors on unit strength and replacement status.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**



- ELEMENTS:** S2 Section  
 S4 Section  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Detachment HQ  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 Company  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 S1 Section  
 S3 Section  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 PM Section  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Platoon HQ

**TASK:** Conduct Unit Deployment (19-2-10001)  
 (FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives an order to redeploy to a designated location. AR 600-8-101 and unit deployment SOP are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The unit has arrived in the mission area of operation with required personnel and equipment. The unit is ready to establish operations.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Headquarters element initiates unit recall.</li> <li>2. Headquarters element conducts mission analysis, to include--                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determining personnel and equipment requirements.</li> <li>b. Identifying external support requirements.</li> <li>c. Reviewing intelligence for area to which unit is deploying.</li> <li>d. Conducting risk analysis.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Headquarters element publishes OPORD and risk management guidance.</li> <li>4. Headquarters element ensures individual preparedness of assigned/attached personnel.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts Soldiers Readiness Processing (SRP) IAW AR 600-8-101.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission specific training.</li> <li>c. Establishes battle roster(s).</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Headquarters element ensures readiness of assigned/attached personnel.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verifies equipment is maintained and deployable.</li> <li>b. Verifies accountability of supplies and equipment to include sensitive items.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| c. Prepares supplies and equipment for transportation IAW load plans.<br><br>6. Headquarters element coordinates transportation requirements.<br>a. Coordinates with Installation Transportation Officer (ITO).<br>b. Publishes manifest for assigned/attached personnel.<br>c. Arranges storage of non-deployed equipment and personal property.<br><br>7. Headquarters element establishes rear detachment, if appropriate.<br>a. Conducts family support activities.<br>b. Publishes rear detachment roster.<br><br>8. Headquarters element conducts unit movement.<br>a. Ships equipment.<br>b. Deploys personnel<br><br>9. Headquarters element conducts Reception, Staging, Onward Movement, and Integration (RSOI).<br>a. Assembles assigned/attached personnel and units.<br>b. Coordinates movement to assigned areas of operation.<br>c. Conducts movement to area of operation.<br>d. Integrates assigned/attached personnel into unit operations. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References     | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|----------------|--------------|---|
| STP 19-95BI-SM | 551-721-1352 | Perform Vehicle Preventive Maintenance Checks And Services (PMCS) |
|                | 551-721-1358 | Prepare Vehicle For Movement And/Or Shipment                      |
|                | 551-721-1359 | Drive Vehicle In A Convoy   |
|                | 551-721-1360 | Drive Cargo Vehicle On Side Roads And Unimproved Roads            |
|                | 551-721-1361 | Drive Cargo Vehicle On Snow/Ice                                   |
|                | 551-721-1366 | Drive Vehicle With Automatic Transmission                         |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Area Damage Control Operations (19-2-20001)  
 (FM 100-20) (FM 19-4) (FM 90-14)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company in support of combat operations or SASO is directed by higher headquarters to assist in area damage control. Enemy attacks and/or natural disasters have caused extensive damage throughout the rear area. The Higher headquarters has directed a military company conduct damage control operations. Company operation center supervises area damage control operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operation center coordinates platoon(s) activities and provides updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander plans for area damage control operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives orders from higher headquarters to include rules of engagement.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Back briefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Issues warning orders.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant ensures support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Operations center coordinates with the platoon(s) to implement area damage control operations. Platoon(s) performs the following:                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts route reconnaissance to gather information about the status of routes into, out of, and around the affected area.</li> <li>b. Determines level and extent of NBC contamination.</li> <li>c. Establishes priority movement for ambulances and engineers.</li> <li>d. Determines special equipment needed.</li> <li>e. Establishes traffic control posts to prevent congestion.</li> <li>f. Establishes roadblocks and checkpoints to control dislocated civilian movement.</li> <li>g. Determines level of flow of dislocated civilians.</li> <li>h. Specifies physical security measures.</li> <li>i. Establishes procedures for maintaining law and order.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operation center monitors platoon(s) conduct during area damage control operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintains communications with platoon(s).</li> <li>b. Monitors level and extent of NBC contamination (if any).</li> <li>c. Ensures priority movement for ambulances and engineers are established.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with platoons to make sure traffic control posts are in place to prevent congestion.</li> <li>e. Ensures roadblocks and checkpoints to control dislocated civilian movement are emplaced.</li> <li>f. Ensures physical security measures are emplaced (if needed).</li> <li>g. Ensures procedures for maintaining law and order are emplaced.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| h. Coordinates for host nation support.<br><br>5. Operation center forwards current information to higher headquarters.<br>a. Receives situation/spot reports.<br>b. Updates company situation map.<br>c. Forwards situation/spot reports to higher headquarters.<br>d. Forwards updated overlay to higher headquarters.<br><br>6. * Commander prepares for future operations. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title                                      |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 051-196-2019 | Conduct And Report A Hasty Route Reconnaissance |
|                    | 191-377-4202 | Establish/Supervise A Traffic Control Post      |
|                    | 191-377-4203 | Establish/Supervise A Roadblock/Checkpoint      |
|                    | 191-377-4204 | Establish/Supervise A Defile                    |
|                    | 191-379-4402 | Plan Roadblocks And Checkpoints                 |
|                    | 191-379-4403 | Plan For Defiles And Holding Areas              |
|                    | 191-379-4409 | Plan Establishment Of Traffic Control Post      |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 191-379-4412 | Plan Straggler Control Operations               |
|                    | 071-332-5000 | Prepare An Operation Overlay                    |
|                    | 071-332-5022 | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)   |
|                    | 081-831-0101 | Request Medical Evacuation                      |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Railway Security (19-2-20011)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company in support of theater operations has been directed by higher headquarters to implement railway security. The commander has directed the operations center to supervise the platoon's railway operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center confirms railways are secure, provides support to the platoons, and forwards updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander plans for railway security.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reviews existing security plans.</li> <li>b. Directs a thorough reconnaissance of the area.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with battalion S2 for threat assessment including terrorist and other threats.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with battalion S3 for host nation support.</li> <li>e. Directs operations center personnel to coordinate with the platoon and monitor the security of the railway.</li> <li>f. Issues orders to include rules of engagement and use of force.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant provides support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Operations center personnel coordinate for support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. S3 coordinates with RAOC fire support requirements.</li> <li>b. G5/S5 coordinates for host nation support, if available.</li> <li>c. S2 coordinates for air surveillance of rail line.</li> <li>d. S3 coordinates with units responsible for sectors that the rail route passes through to. The units will-                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Act as a response force.</li> <li>(2) Conduct reconnaissance of track to check for damage and deter ambush.</li> <li>(3) Occupy key terrain prior to and during passes.</li> </ol> </li> <li>e. S3 coordinates for ADA assets.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations center personnel monitor the platoon conduct of railway security.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures platoon plans for emergency procedures with train commander.</li> <li>b. Ensures platoon plans for special weapons requirements.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon employs security force.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Operations center personnel receive information from platoons.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receive situation/spot reports.</li> <li>b. Consolidate information into the company situation map.</li> <li>c. Forwards situation/spot reports to battalion.</li> <li>d. Forwards updated overlay to higher headquarters.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References                           | Task Number                | Task Title   |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|--|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN<br>STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 191-400-0028               | Coordinate with Host Nation Police   |
|                                      | 071-332-5004               | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order  |
|                                      | 191-377-4209               | Supervise Security Personnel During Convoy Of Special Weapons And Ammunition |
| STP 21-24-SMCT                       | 191-379-4407               | Plan/Implement Convoy Security Operations                                    |
|                                      | 071-332-5021p              | Prepare A Situation Map  |
|                                      | 061-283-6003               | Adjust Indirect Fire   |
|                                      | 071-326-5626               | Prepare An Oral Operation Order  |
|                                      | 071-326-5805               | Conduct A Route Reconnaissance Mission                                       |
|                                      | 071-332-5000               | Prepare An Operation Overlay   |
|                                      | 071-332-5022p              | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                                |
| 081-831-0101                         | Request Medical Evacuation |  |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Security of Command Post (19-2-22005)  
 (FM 100-15) (FM 19-4) (FM 71-100)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Level I and II threat forces are operating in the company's area of operations. The MP company has been tasked to provide command post security. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company ensures the command post is secured and provides updates information to the higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander supervises security operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determines mission requirements.</li> <li>b. Evaluates the threat based on information from the S2.</li> <li>c. Conducts a reconnaissance or map reconnaissance of the area.</li> <li>d. Identifies items and resources available.</li> <li>e. Ensures traffic control posts are located properly.</li> <li>f. Ensures methods of screening authorized personnel are used.</li> <li>g. Ensures vehicle parking and dispersion procedures are used.</li> <li>h. Ensures access rosters (provided by G2) are used.</li> <li>i. Ensures methods for securing and controlling entry to all source production center (ASPC) are being used.</li> <li>j. Ensures methods to provide personal security for the commander are being used.</li> <li>k. Directs operations center personnel to coordinate and monitor the security of the command post.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>l. Issues written order to the platoon(s).</li> </ol> </li> <li>m. Receives plan from the platoon.</li> <li>n. Makes final changes.</li> <li>o. Commander briefs provost marshal/battalion commander on the final plan.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant provides support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for class I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support activities.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. * Operations Sergeant coordinates support requirements for the platoons.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provides for communications.</li> <li>b. Coordinates special equipment requirements.</li> <li>c. Coordinates fire support, if necessary.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations center personnel monitor the platoon conduct of command post security.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure communications are established.</li> <li>b. Maintain updated overlays and changes to the plan.</li> <li>c. Receive situation/spot reports from the platoon(s).</li> <li>d. Consolidate information into company situation map.</li> <li>e. Forward situation/spot reports to higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Forward updated overlays to higher headquarters.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title   |
|--------------------|---------------|--|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0021  | Provide Security to Designated Critical Area                         |
|                    | 191-400-0026  | Direct the Security of a Tactical Operations Center (TOC)            |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                                    |
|                    | 071-332-5021p | Prepare A Situation Map  |
|                    | 113-573-4003  | Encode And Decode Messages Using KTC 600(*) Tactical Operations Code |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 061-283-6003  | Adjust Indirect Fire   |
|                    | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order                                      |
|                    | 071-332-5000  | Prepare An Operation Overlay   |
|                    | 071-332-5022p | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                        |
|                    | 081-831-0101  | Request Medical Evacuation   |
|                    | 113-573-8006  | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)                  |



## **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

### **TASK: ATTACK (19-OPFOR-1010)**

**CONDITION:** The enemy rear area combat service support base has been located by an OPFOR element. Priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements have been obtained by OPFOR patrols. The OPFOR element has automatic and antiarmor weapons and light mortars. The OPFOR element is approximately the size of two platoons.

**STANDARD:** 1. Develop an attack plan. 2. Initiate attack using a scheme of maneuver that exploits enemy flanks, gaps, and weaknesses. 3. Use covered and concealed routes to approach enemy units' flanks, gaps, or weakly held areas. 4. Employ indirect fire to support attack. 5. Penetrate enemy defenses. 6. Destroy equipment and supplies. 7. Inflict heavy casualties. 8. Isolate the combat service support base by blocking reinforcements. 9. Force enemy units to displace. 10. Withdraw before combat service support base is reinforced with tactical combat forces.

### **TASK: CONDUCT ELECTRONIC WARFARE (19-OPFOR-1012)**

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR employs a large number of radio direction finder sets and monitors enemy forces for loose communications security practices.

**STANDARD:** 1. Locate the positions of the enemy command, intelligence, and logistics radio nets. 2. Forward locations to OPFOR HQ. 3. Use jamming signals against enemy radio receivers. 4. Monitor enemy radio nets for intelligence information.

### **TASK: CONDUCT TERRORIST AND SABOTEUR ATTACKS (19-OPFOR-1013)**

**CONDITION:** The OPFOR dispatches small teams into the enemy rear area to disrupt combat service support operations.

**STANDARD:** 1. Locate rear support bases and command and control facilities. 2. Delay and disrupt combat service support operations through probes. 3. Infiltrate combat service support bases to conduct sabotage and terrorist activities. 4. Inflict light casualties. 5. Destroy supplies and equipment.

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise EPW Holding Area (19-2-31003)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has been directed by higher headquarters to supervise an EPW holding area operation within the forward battle area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Ensure EPW holding area operations are established IAW the Geneva Convention.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>b. Determines special requirements and equipment.</li> <li>c. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Identifies time and resources available.</li> <li>e. Back briefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Issues oral orders to the platoon(s).</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. First Sergeant provides support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Company Commander coordinates with platoon leader to establish an EPW holding area.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures platoon(s) select a site for the holding area based on METT-TC, based on the following;                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Close to evacuation routes.</li> <li>(2) Close to emergency medical care facilities.</li> <li>(3) Close to water source(s).</li> <li>(4) Close to supply and support activities.</li> <li>(5) Away from the enemy.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Ensures site is in defilade.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with MI and medical for size of area required to support their mission.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with NGOs on treatment of EPWs</li> <li>e. Ensures platoon(s) coordinate with support elements for construction of EPW holding area to include;                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Perimeter fencing.</li> <li>(2) Adequate shelter.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Ensures site will include external defensive measures based on METT-TC.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Operations center monitors platoon conduct while operating an EPW holding area.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Platoons process EPW/CI into the holding area according to STRESS.                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Search EPW/CI's.</li> <li>(2) Tag each EPW/CI's.</li> <li>(3) Report EPW/CI's through the chain of command.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| (4) Evacuate EPW/CI's from the holding area as soon as possible.<br>(5) Segregate EPW/CI's.<br>(6) Safeguard EPW/CI's.<br>b. Platoon(s) guard EPW/CI's pending evacuation.<br>(1) Organize an EPW security force.<br>(2) Issue control instruction.<br>(3) Consider EPW/CI's to be effective fighting force; treat them accordingly.<br>(4) Do not use force as a disciplinary measure except to protect life and property and to preserve security and control.<br>5. Operation center forwards current information to higher headquarters.<br>a. Receives situation/spot report.<br>b. Updates company situation map.<br>c. Forwards situation/spot report to higher headquarters.<br>d. Forwards updates overlay to higher headquarters. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title  |
|--------------------|---------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0001  | Direct Corps Enemy Prisoners of War/Civilian Internee Holding Areas     |
|                    | 191-400-0002  | Plan Processing of Captives   |
|                    | 191-400-0004  | Direct Enemy Prisoner of War Processing and Evacuation                  |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 191-377-4205  | Supervise Processing Of EPW/CI At A Collecting Point Or Holding Area    |
|                    | 191-378-6079  | Supervise Transfer Of EPW/CI To Collecting Point/Holding Area/Enclosure |
|                    | 191-379-4405p | Plan Movement Of EPW/CI   |
|                    | 191-379-4450  | Supervise Handling Of Enemy Personnel And Equipment At Unit Level       |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order   |
|                    | 071-332-5000  | Prepare An Operation Overlay  |
|                    | 071-332-5022  | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                           |
|                    | 301-337-6001  | Process Captured Materiel   |

#### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

##### TASK: CONDUCT DELIBERATE AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1004)

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is operating along an enemy main supply route. OPFOR intelligence has reported that an enemy element is conducting a road march along the route. OPFOR has set up an

ambush. The march element is approximately 15 minutes from the ambush point. The OPFOR element possesses automatic weapons, antiarmor weapons, and command detonated mines. OPFOR HQ has ordered complete destruction of march element.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Force enemy march element to halt in kill zone. 4. Initiate ambush on order of OPFOR leader. 5. Kill, wound, or capture all enemy personnel, and destroy all specified vehicles and equipment in the kill zone. 6. Engage all enemy reinforcement and security elements. 7. Sustain minimum casualties from enemy forces. 8. Consolidate and withdraw from the area on order. 9. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements.

**TASK:** DISRUPT EPW/CI OPERATIONS (19-OPFOR-1014)

**CONDITION:** OPFOR soldiers are captured.

**STANDARD:** OPFOR soldiers escape or retain weapons and documents of military intelligence value.1. Prevent successful search.2. Maintain unit integrity.3. Plan escape.4. Delay movement to nearest collecting point.5. Prevent safeguarding of EPWs in order to cause embarrassment to the U.S.

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise EPW/CI Collecting, Processing and Evacuating (19-2-31004)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company is operating in a forward battle area. EPW/CI have been captured or released to the military police company for collection, processing and evacuating. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center ensures EPW/CI are Collected, processed and evacuated to the nearest holding area and provides updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Company Commander receives mission from higher headquarters.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning order.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Identifies times and resources available.</li> <li>e. Back briefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Issues written or oral order.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. First Sergeant ensures support requirement.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support activities.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Operation Sergeant coordinates with platoons for EPW/CI collecting, processing and evacuating.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes communication with platoon(s) and higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Specifies locations for collecting points.</li> <li>c. Ensures EPW/CI are processed according to the STRESS rule.</li> <li>d. Ensures platoon reconnoiters evacuation route.</li> <li>e. Establishes emergency procedures, i.e., riot or escape.</li> <li>f. Determines platoon(s) support requirements to include-                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Fire support.</li> <li>(2) Transportation requirements.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Operations center monitors the platoon conduct during operations.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitors communication with platoon.</li> <li>b. Monitors collection points.</li> <li>c. Monitors EPW/CI processing according to the STRESS rule.</li> <li>d. Ensures support requirements are available.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. Operation center receives information.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives EPW/CI reports from collecting point.</li> <li>b. Receives situation/spot reports from platoon(s).</li> <li>c. Consolidates information into company situation map.</li> <li>d. Forwards EPW/CI reports to higher headquarters.</li> <li>e. Forwards situation/spot reports to higher headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References                         | Task Number   | Task Title  |
|------------------------------------|---------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN                     | 191-400-0002  | Plan Processing of Captives   |
|                                    | 191-400-0004  | Direct Enemy Prisoner of War Processing and Evacuation                  |
| STP 19-95B24<br>STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-332-5022p | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                           |
|                                    | 071-326-5505  | Issue An Oral Operation Order   |
|                                    | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                                       |
|                                    | 191-377-4205  | Supervise Processing Of EPW/CI At A Collecting Point Or Holding Area    |
|                                    | 191-378-6079  | Supervise Transfer Of EPW/CI To Collecting Point/Holding Area/Enclosure |
|                                    | 191-379-4405  | Plan Movement Of EPW/CI   |
|                                    | 191-379-4406  | Prepare EPW/CI Processing Plan For An EPW/CI Camp                       |
| STP 21-24-SMCT                     | 191-379-4413  | Supervise Processing Of EPW/CI For Internment                           |
|                                    | 071-326-5805  | Conduct A Route Reconnaissance Mission                                  |
|                                    | 071-332-5000  | Prepare An Operation Overlay  |
|                                    | 071-332-5021p | Prepare A Situation Map   |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****TASK: CONDUCT DELIBERATE AMBUSH (19-OPFOR-1004)**

**CONDITION:** An OPFOR element is operating along an enemy main supply route. OPFOR intelligence has reported that an enemy element is conducting a road march along the route. OPFOR has set up an ambush. The march element is approximately 15 minutes from the ambush point. The OPFOR element possesses automatic weapons, antiarmor weapons, and command detonated mines. OPFOR HQ has ordered complete destruction of march element.

**STANDARD:** 1. Prepare ambush site before arrival of enemy element. 2. Surprise enemy forces. 3. Force enemy march element to halt in kill zone. 4. Initiate ambush on order of OPFOR leader. 5. Kill, wound, or capture all enemy personnel, and destroy all specified vehicles and equipment in the kill zone. 6. Engage all enemy reinforcement and security elements. 7. Sustain minimum casualties from enemy forces. 8. Consolidate and withdraw from the area on order. 9. Report all specified priority intelligence requirements and other intelligence requirements.

**TASK: DISRUPT EPW/CI OPERATIONS (19-OPFOR-1014)**

**CONDITION:** OPFOR soldiers are captured.

**STANDARD:** OPFOR soldiers escape or retain weapons and documents of military intelligence value.1. Prevent successful search.2. Maintain unit integrity.3. Plan escape.4. Delay movement to nearest collecting point.5. Prevent safeguarding of EPWs in order to cause embarrassment to the U.S.

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-2-31005)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company has captured enemy documents and equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company processes documents and equipment IAW instructions and time limits established by higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The platoon(s) tags all captured documents and equipment and annotates the following:                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Type of document or equipment (for example, maps, photographs, rifle, radio).</li> <li>b. Date and time captured.</li> <li>c. Place of capture (grid coordinates).</li> <li>d. Capturing unit.</li> <li>e. Circumstance of capture.</li> <li>f. Prisoner's name (if taken from an EPW) and unit.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * Company Commander reports the following information to higher headquarters:                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Type of document or equipment.</li> <li>b. Date and time of capture.</li> <li>c. Place of capture (grid coordinates).</li> <li>d. Capturing unit.</li> <li>e. Circumstances of capture.</li> <li>f. Prisoner's name(if taken from an EPW) and unit.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. * Platoon leader disposes of documents and equipment according to guidance from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Destroys, secures, evacuates, or abandons captured equipment.</li> <li>b. Release any transferred equipment on DA form 4137.</li> <li>c. Evacuates captured documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References     | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|----------------|--------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN | 191-400-0002 | Plan Processing of Captives                                       |
|                | 191-400-0004 | Direct Enemy Prisoner of War Processing and Evacuation            |
| STP 21-24-SMCT | 191-377-5250 | Handle Enemy Personnel And Equipment                              |
|                | 301-337-6001 | Process Captured Materiel   |
|                | 191-379-4450 | Supervise Handling Of Enemy Personnel And Equipment At Unit Level |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**TASK:** CONCEAL/DESTROY ITEMS OF TACTICAL VALUE (19-OPFOR-1015)

**CONDITION:** OPFOR soldiers surrender documents and equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempt to conceal/destroy items of tactical value.

**STANDARD:** OPFOR soldier's retain/destroy documents and equipment.1. Prevent successful capture of documents and equipment.2. Destroy documents and equipment.3. Remove identifying markings from equipment.4. Remove unit identifying insignia. 5. Provide misleading information.

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Evacuation of U.S. Military Prisoners (19-2-32002)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has been directed by higher headquarters to coordinate evacuation of US military prisoners from forward battle area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center ensures US military prisoners are evacuated from the forward battle area confinement facility to the rear confinement facility.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>b. Determines special requirements and equipment.</li> <li>c. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Identifies time and resources available.</li> <li>e. Back briefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Issues oral orders to the platoon(s).</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant provides support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. * Operation Sergeant coordinates with platoon(s) for US military prisoner evacuation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes communication to include call signs and frequencies.</li> <li>b. Performs a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>c. Specifies evacuation routes.</li> <li>d. Ensures platoon have a contingency plan for enemy air, ground, and NBC attacks.</li> <li>e. Ensures escort personnel are briefed.</li> <li>f. Coordinates fire support requirements.</li> <li>g. Notifies theater correction facility as to date and time prisoners are to be evacuated.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations center coordinates the preparation of prisoners for evacuation.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures DD Form 629 (Receipt for Prisoners or Detained Persons) is prepared.</li> <li>b. Ensures completion of DD Form 497 (Confinement Orders).</li> <li>c. Ensures completion of DA Form 4137 (Evidence/Property Custody Document).</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Operations center monitors platoon(s) conduct during evacuation of US military prisoners.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitors communications.</li> <li>b. Monitors movement of prisoners on specified routes.</li> <li>c. Provides requested support.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| 6. Operation center forwards current information to higher headquarters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives situation/spot reports.</li> <li>b. Updates company situation map.</li> <li>c. Forwards situation/spot reports to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Forwards updates overlays to higher headquarters.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| STP 19-95C14-SM-TG | 191-381-1286 | Check Confinement Order (DD Form 497) For Completeness And Accuracy   |
|                    | 191-381-1300 | Escort Prisoners On Foot Outside A Confinement Facility   |
|                    | 191-381-1303 | Verify The Accuracy Of DD Forms 367 (Prisoner's Release Order) And DD Forms 629 (Receipt For Prisoner Or Detained Person) |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-326-5626 | Prepare An Oral Operation Order   |
|                    | 071-332-5000 | Prepare An Operation Overlay  |
|                    | 071-332-5022 | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)   |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Field Detention Facility (FDF) for US Military Prisoners (19-2-32003)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has been operating in a forward battle area. US military prisoners have been turned over to military police and must be protected/sustained until they can be evacuated to the Theater Confinement Facility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center ensures a field detention facility is established and is fully operational.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives a mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning orders.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Identifies time and resources available.</li> <li>e. Back briefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Issues written or oral order.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant ensures support requirement.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support activities.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> <li>d. Ensures MWR and religious support activities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. * Operation Sergeant plans the establishment of a field detention facility.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures an area reconnaissance is conducted for the selection of a site for the detention facility.</li> <li>b. Ensures the site is centrally located within the battalion area of responsibility.</li> <li>c. Ensures the site is close to evacuation routes, water source(s), and supply and support activities.</li> <li>d. Ensures coordination is made with engineer and medical units for construction and sustainment of operations within the facility.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. * Operations Sergeant coordinates construction of field detention facility.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures the construction of a perimeter barrier of concertina or barbed wire (if building is not available).</li> <li>b. Ensures a separate area is provided to watch segregated group of prisoners.</li> <li>c. Ensures sanitation area is provided to include latrines and showers.</li> <li>d. Ensures an area for medical examinations is included.</li> <li>e. Ensures provisions are made for food preparation outside the facility.</li> <li>f. Ensures some type of shelter from the elements is provided.</li> <li>g. Ensures an area is established within the compound or building for processing and interrogating prisoners.</li> <li>h. Ensures each segregated area within the compound has access to water or a water point.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| 5. Operations center coordinates with the platoon(s) for defense of the facility. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures communication is established with platoons and higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Ensures established of perimeter defense positions, observation posts, and positioning of mines are established.</li> <li>c. Ensures establishment of contingency plans for enemy air, ground, and NBC attacks.</li> <li>d. Ensures coordination with adjacent units for support.</li> </ul> 6. Operations center forwards current information to higher headquarters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives situation/spot report.</li> <li>b. Updates company situation/spot report.</li> <li>c. Forwards situation/spot report to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Forwards updated overlay to higher headquarters.</li> </ul> 7. * Company Commander plans for future operations. |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 051-192-3032 | Direct Installation/Removal Of A Hasty Protective Minefield   |
|                    | 051-196-4012 | Conduct A Platoon Reconnaissance Mission  |
|                    | 071-326-5505 | Issue An Oral Operation Order   |
|                    | 071-331-1003 | Installation Planning And Installation Of A Platoon Early Warning System An/Trs-2   |
|                    | 071-410-0019 | Control Organic Fires   |
|                    | 071-430-0006 | Conduct A Defense By A Platoon  |
|                    | 113-573-4003 | Encode And Decode Messages Using KTC 600(*) Tactical Operations Code  |
| STP 19-95C14-SM-TG | 191-381-1303 | Verify The Accuracy Of DD Forms 367 (Prisoner's Release Order) And DD Forms 629 (Receipt For Prisoner Or Detained Person) |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-326-5704 | Supervise Construction Of A Fighting Position   |
|                    | 071-326-5705 | Establish An Observation Post   |
|                    | 071-326-5775 | Coordinate With An Adjacent Platoon   |
|                    | 071-332-5000 | Prepare An Operation Overlay  |
|                    | 071-332-5022 | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)   |
|                    | 081-831-0102 | Supervise Unit Preventive Medicine And Field Sanitation Procedures  |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Supervise Military Police Support to Populace and Resource Control Operations (19-2-33001)  
 (FM 100-20) (FM 19-4) (FM 41-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has been directed to provide support to a GS civil affairs detachment and host nations agencies conducting populace and resource control operations. Military police will provide security and control measures. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operation center ensures platoon(s) provide the necessary security and control measures and forwards updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives a mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning order.</li> <li>b. Conducts a mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Identifies time and resources available.</li> <li>e. Back briefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Issues written or oral orders.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant ensures support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. * Operation Sergeant coordinates with platoon(s) to implement populace and resource control support operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes communications with platoon(s) and higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Establishes liaison with host nation agencies.</li> <li>c. Coordinates populace control measures to include-                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Establishing or enforce curfews.</li> <li>(2) Establishing movement restrictions.</li> <li>(3) Checking travel permits.</li> <li>(4) Checking registration cards.</li> <li>(5) Assisting in resettlement of villagers.</li> <li>(6) Segregating dislocated civilians.</li> <li>(7) Treating civilians IAW Geneva Convention and US policies.</li> </ol> </li> <li>d. Coordinates resource control measures to include-                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Checks licenses.</li> <li>(2) Establishing regulations or guidelines.</li> <li>(3) Establishing road blocks/check points.</li> <li>(4) Establishing ration control.</li> <li>(5) Establishing an amnesty program.</li> <li>(6) Coordinating inspection of facilities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>e. Coordinates evacuation of host-nation noncombatants.</li> <li>f. Assists host nation with processing dislocated civilians.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| 4. Operation center monitors platoon conduct during populace and resource control operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitors communication with platoon(s) and higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Monitors populace control measures.</li> <li>c. Monitors resource control measures.</li> <li>d. Monitors evacuation of host-nation noncombatants.</li> <li>e. Monitors dislocated civilian processing.</li> </ul> |    |       |
| 5. Operation center receives updated information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives situation/spot reports from platoon(s).</li> <li>b. Updates company situation map.</li> <li>c. Forwards situation/spot report to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Forwards updated overlay to higher headquarters.</li> </ul>  |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title  |
|--------------------|---------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0001  | Direct Corps Enemy Prisoners of War/Civilian Internee Holding Areas |
|                    | 191-400-0002  | Plan Processing of Captives   |
|                    | 191-400-0003  | Coordinate Refugee Control Operations                               |
|                    | 191-400-0004  | Direct Enemy Prisoner of War Processing and Evacuation              |
|                    | 191-400-0005  | Plan Straggler Control Operations                                   |
|                    | 191-400-0028  | Coordinate with Host Nation Police                                  |
|                    | 191-400-0029  | Coordinate Employment of Joint U.S./U.N. Forces                     |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-332-5004  | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                                   |
|                    | 071-332-5021p | Prepare A Situation Map   |
|                    | 191-377-4203  | Establish/Supervise A Roadblock/Checkpoint                          |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 191-379-4402  | Plan Roadblocks And Checkpoints                                     |
|                    | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order                                     |
|                    | 071-332-5022p | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                       |
|                    | 191-379-4450  | Supervise Handling Of Enemy Personnel And Equipment At Unit Level   |
|                    | 301-337-6001  | Process Captured Materiel   |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Provide Military Police Support to Dislocated Civilian Resettlement Operations (19-2-33002)  
 (FM 19-4) (FM 41-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has been directed to provide support to a GS civil affairs detachment and host nation agencies conducting resettlement operations. Military police will provide internal security and law and order functions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operation center ensures platoon(s) provide the necessary security and law and order support for dislocated civilian resettlement operations.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Company Commander receives mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issues warning order.</li> <li>b. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>c. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>d. Identifies time and resources available.</li> <li>e. Back briefs higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Issues written or oral orders.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant ensures support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> <li>d. Ensures MWR and religious support activities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. * Operations Sergeant coordinates with platoon(s) to implement resettlement support operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes communications with platoon(s) and higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Establishes liaison with host nation agencies for interpreters and law enforcement support.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with civil affairs and transportation to establish a traffic control plan to include;                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Roadblock/Checkpoints.</li> <li>(2) Traffic Control Post.</li> <li>(3) Holding Areas.</li> </ol> </li> <li>d. Establishes control and assembly points for collection of dislocated civilians.</li> <li>e. Keep main supply routes (MSR) clear of dislocated civilian traffic.</li> <li>f. Establishes emergency rest stops (Holding Areas) at congested points.</li> <li>g. Provides security and law and order support with host nation agencies at a dislocated civilian camp.</li> <li>h. Establishes external and internal security.</li> <li>i. Plan for the use of QRF.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Operations Sergeant monitors platoon conduct during resettlement support operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitors communications.</li> <li>b. Ensures the traffic control plan has been implemented.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |



| <b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>   | <b>GO</b> | <b>NO-GO</b> |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| c. Monitors security and law and order support operations at the dislocated civilian camp.<br><br>5. Operations center receives updated information.<br>a. Receives situation/spot report.<br>b. Updates company situation map.<br>c. Forwards situation/spot report to higher headquarters..<br>d. Forwards updated overlay to higher headquarters. |           |              |

| <b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b> |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
|--|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|--------------|
| <b>ITERATION</b>                                   | <b>1</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>M</b> | <b>TOTAL</b> |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                         |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                              |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                       |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| <b>References</b>  | <b>Task Number</b> | <b>Task Title</b>   |
|--------------------|--------------------|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0001       | Direct Corps Enemy Prisoners of War/Civilian Internee Holding Areas     |
|                    | 191-400-0002       | Plan Processing of Captives   |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 191-400-0003       | Coordinate Refugee Control Operations                                   |
|                    | 071-332-5004       | Prepare A Battalion Warning Order                                       |
|                    | 071-332-5021p      | Prepare A Situation Map   |
|                    | 071-410-0012p      | Supervise Occupation Of An Assembly Area                                |
|                    | 113-573-4003       | Encode And Decode Messages Using KTC 600(*) Tactical Operations Code    |
|                    | 191-377-4202p      | Establish/Supervise A Traffic Control Post                              |
|                    | 191-377-4203P      | Establish/Supervise A Roadblock/Checkpoint                              |
|                    | 191-377-4204p      | Supervise The Establishment And Operation Of A Defile And Holding Areas |
|                    | 191-379-4402p      | Plan Roadblocks And Checkpoints   |
|                    | 191-379-4403p      | Plan For Defiles And Holding Areas                                      |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 191-379-4409p      | Plan Establishment Of A Traffic Control Post                            |
|                    | 191-379-4416p      | Develop A Military Police Platoon Traffic Control Plan                  |
|                    | 191-380-0109p      | Plan Patrol Activities  |
|                    | 071-326-5626       | Prepare An Oral Operation Order   |
|                    | 071-332-5022p      | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)                           |
|                    | 081-831-0101       | Request Medical Evacuation  |

### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Perform Company-Level Law and Order Operations (19-2-40001)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has been directed to conduct law and order operations. The company is established in an area of operations with specific missions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company coordinates with other agencies and host-nation authorities. The company operations cell develops the plan to distribute MP assets in conjunction with other missions and based on the tactical environment. The company performs operation to include traffic enforcement, crime prevention, physical security, antiterrorism measures, and investigations. Major incidents are reported to USACIDC for investigation.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts mission analysis.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identifies specifies and implied tasks.</li> <li>(2) Identifies essential tasks from specified and implied tasks.</li> </ol> </li> <li>b. Determine current friendly/enemy situation and course of action.</li> <li>c. Analyzes course of action through wargaming process.</li> <li>d. Compares courses of action.</li> <li>e. Makes a decision.</li> <li>f. Determines personnel and equipment requirements for the mission.</li> <li>g. Coordinates with higher headquarters the rules of engagement, use of force criteria and Geneva Convention requirements.</li> <li>h. Coordinates for any host nation support and host nation requirements regarding the execution of the mission.</li> <li>i. Conducts a map reconnaissance, at a minimum, of the area of responsibility.</li> <li>j. Issues warning orders.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * Company Commander/Platoon Leader coordinates with friendly/host nation law enforcement agencies to include-                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Other DOD police agencies.</li> <li>b. Allied police agencies.</li> <li>c. Host nation authorities.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Operations center establishes law enforcement operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sets up company Operation Center.</li> <li>b. Instructs platoon regarding patrol patterns and distribution.</li> <li>c. Establishes communication with platoons.</li> <li>d. Receives platoon support request regarding establishment and operation of platoon military police desk operations.</li> <li>e. Coordinates for host nation support concerning host nation personnel in US custody.</li> <li>f. Coordinates for holding facility for US prisoners.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. * First Sergeant coordinates for supplies and morale welfare for the soldiers.</li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates to ensure classes I, III, IV, V, VII, and VIII are on hand at company and platoon levels.</li> <li>b. Coordinates to ensure platoons have a proper and workable medical evacuation plan.</li> <li>c. Coordinates for morale support to the platoon (i.e., mail, showers, etc).</li> </ul> <p>5. * Company Commander finalizes plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives enemy threat information from higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Ensures logistical channel is functioning between higher headquarters, company and platoons.</li> <li>c. Back briefs higher headquarters commander concerning mission and results of mission analysis.</li> <li>d. Issues orders to platoons.</li> </ul> <p>6. Company performs law and order activities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts traffic enforcement, crime prevention, antiterrorism measures, force protection measures, and investigations of minor crimes as the tactical situation permits.</li> <li>b. Refers serious incidents such as deaths, serious injury, and war crimes to the USACIDC for investigation.</li> <li>c. Receives completed MP paperwork from the platoons.</li> <li>d. Sends reports to Law and Order Detachment.</li> </ul> <p>7. Company consolidates following mission completion.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives reports concerning casualties and lost equipment in the company to higher headquarters.</li> <li>b. Back briefs higher headquarters concerning current company status.</li> <li>c. Prepares for future operations.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References     | Task Number  | Task Title  |  |
|----------------|--------------|---|--|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN | 191-400-0011 | Supervise Preparation of a Traffic Control Plan                             |  |
|                | 191-400-0024 | Plan the Collecting and Reporting of Criminal/Terrorist Intelligence        |  |
|                | 191-400-0027 | Plan Training of a Multinational Police Unit                                |  |
|                | 191-400-0028 | Coordinate with Host Nation Police  |  |
|                | 191-400-0034 | Direct the Conduct of a Police Administrative Section                       |  |
|                | 191-400-0035 | Direct the Conduct of a Military Working Dog (MWD) Section                  |  |
|                | 191-400-0036 | Direct the Conduct of Investigations  |  |
|                | 191-400-0037 | Supervise the Development of Traffic Control Procedures Based on Statistics |  |
|                |              |   |  |
|                |              |   |  |

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title   |
|--------------------|---------------|--|
|                    | 191-400-0038  | Direct the Development of a Traffic Control Studies Plan                             |
|                    | 191-400-0041  | Establish Liaison with Other Military/Civilian Law Enforcement Agencies              |
|                    | 191-400-0044  | Supervise Accountability of Evidence in the Evidence Room                            |
|                    | 191-400-0045  | Direct Patrol Activities   |
|                    | 191-400-0046  | Analyze Crime Statistics to Determine Law Enforcement Problem Areas and Crime Trends |
|                    | 191-400-0049  | Plan Utilization of Military Working Dogs for Battlefield Missions                   |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | P191-376-0001 | Prepare DA Form 3975 (Military Police Report)  |
|                    | 191-377-5205p | Prepare A Military Police Desk Blotter (DA Form 3997)                                |
|                    | 191-377-5206p | Prepare Desk Reference Cards (DA Form 3998)  |
|                    | 191-377-5207p | Process Offenders  |
|                    | 191-377-5213p | Process Juvenile Offenders   |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 191-379-4416  | Develop A Military Police Platoon Traffic Control Plan                               |
|                    | 191-379-5402p | Prepare A Patrol Distribution Plan   |
|                    | 191-380-0109p | Plan Patrol Activities   |
|                    | 071-326-5626  | Prepare An Oral Operation Order  |
|                    | 071-328-5301  | Inspect Personnel/Equipment  |
|                    | 071-332-5022  | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)  |
|                    | 091-309-0711  | Direct Vehicle And Equipment Recovery Operations                                     |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Detachment HQ

**TASK:** Establish an MP Law and Order Operations Center (19-2-40002)  
 (FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company/L&O augmentation detachment is directed by higher headquarters to establish a law and order operations center in the company's area of responsibility. FM 19-10 and FM 19-4 are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The law and order operations center is established and functional.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Law and Order operations officer/MP Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determines mission requirements.</li> <li>b. Determines special requirements and equipment based on the mission, such as transportation, communications, and facilities.</li> <li>c. Requests threat assessment from MI and CID.</li> <li>d. Determines commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).</li> <li>e. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. MP Company Commander determines platoon areas of responsibility.</li> <li>3. Law and Order operations team/MP company develops SOPs.</li> <li>* 4. Law and Order operations officer/MP Company commander issues oral or written orders.</li> <li>* 5. Law and Order operations officer/ Company Commander coordinates with friendly/host nation law enforcement agencies to include--                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Other DOD police agencies.</li> <li>b. Multinational police agencies.</li> <li>c. Host nation authorities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>6. Law and Order team/ MP Company establishes a law and order operations center.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes military police operation center sections to include-                                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Military Police Operations.</li> <li>(2) Administration.</li> <li>(3) Force Protection.</li> <li>(4) MP Desk.</li> <li>(5) Military Police Investigation.</li> <li>(6) Police Intelligence Operations (PIO).</li> <li>(7) Traffic Accident Investigation.</li> <li>(8) Military Police Working Dog (if attached or assigned).</li> <li>(9) Customs (if attached or assigned).</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Establishes detention and evidence storage capabilities as outlined in FM 19-10 and within limits of available resources.</li> <li>c. Establishes communications within area of operations in coordination with supporting and supported units.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number                              | Task Title  |
|--------------------|--|---|
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 191-377-5205p                            | Prepare A Military Police Desk Blotter (DA Form 3997)                       |
|                    | 191-377-5206p                            | Prepare Desk Reference Cards (DA Form 3998)                                 |
|                    | 191-377-5207p                            | Process Offenders   |
|                    | 191-377-5213p                            | Process Juvenile Offenders  |
|                    | 191-379-4416p                            | Develop A Military Police Platoon Traffic Control Plan                      |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 191-380-0109p                            | Plan Patrol Activities  |
|                    | 071-326-5626                             | Prepare An Oral Operation Order   |
| STP MP OES-CAPTAIN | 081-831-0101                             | Request Medical Evacuation  |
|                    | 191-400-0011                             | Supervise Preparation of a Traffic Control Plan                             |
|                    | 191-400-0024                             | Plan the Collecting and Reporting of Criminal/Terrorist Intelligence        |
|                    | 191-400-0028                             | Coordinate with Host Nation Police  |
|                    | 191-400-0037                             | Supervise the Development of Traffic Control Procedures Based on Statistics |
|                    | 191-400-0038                             | Direct the Development of a Traffic Control Studies Plan                    |
|                    | 191-400-0040                             | Supervise the Preparation of a Physical Security Plan                       |
|                    | 191-400-0041                             | Establish Liaison with Other Military/Civilian Law Enforcement Agencies     |
| 191-400-0042       | Plan Community Crime Prevention Programs |   |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Conduct Company-Level Civil Disturbance Control Operations (19-2-40003)  
 (FM 19-4) (FM 90-40)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company in a combat or stability operation or support operation is directed to coordinate and supervise civil disturbance operations. Some iterations may be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** A military police company supervises and coordinates operations to meet and counter a civil disturbance threat. Threat is defeated with little loss of personnel and equipment during the operation.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>b. Coordinates for initial intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) with higher headquarters.</li> <li>c. Determines specified, implied and essential tasks.</li> <li>d. Determines constraints.</li> <li>e. Conducts risk assessment for mission and force.</li> <li>f. Determines commander's critical information requirements (CCIR) and own intelligence priorities.</li> <li>g. Determines the rules of engagement (ROE) and use of force policy.</li> <li>h. Issues warning order to platoons/company support sections.</li> </ul> <p>2. Operations center coordinates for special equipment/personnel for mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates for apprehension/detention of civilian personnel.</li> <li>b. Coordinates with higher headquarters for disposition of evidence.</li> <li>c. Coordinates for support to include SRT teams, hostage negotiators, MWD teams, PSYOP, civil affairs, host nations.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with Emergency Operation Center (EOC) personnel.</li> <li>e. Coordinates with higher headquarters for local or host nation law enforcement personnel.</li> <li>f. Coordinates for special equipment to include, if needed-                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Kevlar and Face Shield</li> <li>(2) Body Armor/Flak Vest</li> <li>(3) Shield, Work Gloves, Batons</li> <li>(4) Protective Masks</li> <li>(5) Elbow Pads</li> <li>(6) Weapons/Bayonets</li> <li>(7) CS/CR/OC Pepper Spray</li> <li>(8) Smoke Grenades</li> <li>(9) Breaching Ramps</li> <li>(10) Scaling Ladders</li> <li>(11) Portable Radios</li> <li>(12) Bullhorns</li> <li>(13) VHS Cameras to videotape individuals in the crowd for identification</li> <li>(14) Transportation assets to detention cell/areas</li> <li>(15) Night Vision Devices</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(16) Portable Lighting</li> <li>(17) Hand/Leg Irons</li> <li>(18) Flex Cuffs</li> <li>(19) Duct Tape</li> <li>(20) Shin Guards</li> <li>g. Coordinates for additional support to include:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Medical assistance and aid station.</li> <li>(2) Communication with platoon and higher headquarters.</li> </ul> </li> <li>h. Establishes communications with platoon and higher headquarters.</li> <li>* 3. First Sergeant ensures soldiers have necessary equipment to accomplish the mission.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates medical evacuation for soldiers.</li> <li>b. Assists commander in identifying essential soldier tasks that support the collective tasks.</li> <li>c. Ensures Classes I, V, VIII, are supplied to the soldier.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Company Commander, after making a tentative plan, begins initial movement.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinates with higher headquarters for additional military support.</li> <li>b. Coordinates for the actual conduct of the operation concerning --                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Transportation requirements</li> <li>(2) Medical assistance</li> <li>(3) Legal issues</li> <li>(4) Public affairs support</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. Company Commander completes plan.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gives guidance on ROE and use of force.</li> <li>b. Briefs platoon leaders concerning what to expect when dealing with crowds based on information received from S-2.</li> <li>c. Issues orders.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 6. Company Commander and First Sergeant supervise platoon inspections and rehearsals.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Check for appropriate equipment.</li> <li>b. Oversee rehearsals to meet and counter threat.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Employment and use of non-lethal munitions.</li> <li>(2) Practice situations in which the ROE/use of force is applied.</li> <li>(3) Use of riot dispensers.</li> <li>(4) Hand and arm signals/voice commands.</li> <li>(5) Formations to include line, wedge, echelon.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>* 7. Company Commander and First Sergeant supervise the conduct of the civil disturbance operation.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Use appropriate crowd control measures necessary to include:                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Line (Skirmishers).</li> <li>(2) Wedge ( To break up skirmishers).</li> <li>(3) Echelon (To move skirmishers to desired location).</li> <li>(4) Circle or diamond formation ( To move a VIP, or move through a crowd).</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Employ special teams as required.                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Selected marksman.</li> <li>(2) Personnel armed with shotguns.</li> <li>(3) Riot control devices.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Supervise the emplacement of barriers.</li> <li>d. Coordinate for employment of PSYOP/MWD.</li> <li>e. Coordinate with Public Affairs Office.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |



| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| 8. Operations center monitors situation of civil disturbance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintains communications.</li> <li>b. Updates higher headquarters with information from scene.</li> <li>c. Coordinates for re-supply and reinforcements to the platoons.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for medical assistance, as required.</li> </ul> * 9. Company Commander and First Sergeant supervise post-civil disturbance operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Check for casualties and loss of equipment.</li> <li>b. Prepare for future operations.</li> <li>c. Conduct an after action review (AAR).</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| STP 19-95C14-SM-TG | 071-326-0600 | Use Visual Signaling Techniques (Dismounted)                            |
|                    | 113-587-2070 | Operate Secure Sincgars Single Channel (SC)                             |
|                    | 113-587-2071 | Operate Secure Sincgars Frequency Hopping (FH) (Net Members)            |
|                    | 113-587-2072 | Operate Sincgars Frequency Hopping (FH) Net Control Station (NCS)       |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 191-379-5400 | Conduct Platoon Riot Control Formations                                 |
|                    | 071-326-5626 | Prepare An Oral Operation Order   |
|                    | 071-328-5301 | Inspect Personnel/Equipment   |
| STP MP OES-CAPTAIN | 191-400-0028 | Coordinate with Host Nation Police                                      |
|                    | 191-400-0030 | Plan Operations to Counter or Control Civil Disturbances                |
|                    | 191-400-0035 | Direct the Conduct of a Military Working Dog (MWD) Section              |
|                    | 191-400-0041 | Establish Liaison with Other Military/Civilian Law Enforcement Agencies |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

NONE:

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Coordinate Law Enforcement Patrol Operations (19-2-41001)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company has been directed by higher headquarters to coordinate law enforcement patrol operations with in its area of responsibility. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The operations center ensures platoons conduct law enforcement patrol operations and forwards updated information to higher headquarters.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Company Commander receives mission from higher headquarters.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>b. Determines special requirements and equipment.</li> <li>c. Requests threat analysis.</li> <li>d. Determines commanders' critical information requirements (CCIR).</li> <li>e. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>f. Determines platoons area of responsibility.</li> <li>g. Issues a oral written order.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. First Sergeant provides support requirements.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for class I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Company Commander coordinates with friendly law enforcement agencies to include-                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Other DOD police agencies.</li> <li>b. Allied police agencies.</li> <li>c. Host nation authorities.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Operations Sergeant establishes a patrol distribution plan to include-                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Area's size of responsibility and patrol patterns.</li> <li>b. Number of personnel.</li> <li>c. Number of vehicles.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. Operation center coordinates law enforcement patrol operations with platoon(s).                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sets up desk operations.</li> <li>b. Assigns patrol areas to platoons.</li> <li>c. Establishes communications.</li> <li>d. Coordinate kennel support for military police working dogs with Law and Order detachment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>6. Operations center monitors law enforcement patrol operations with platoons.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitors communications.</li> <li>b. Monitors patrol activities through the platoon(s).</li> <li>c. Refers serious incidents such as death, serious injury, and war crimes to the USACIDC for investigation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>7. Operation center forwards current information to Law and Order Detachment.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| <b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>   | <b>GO</b> | <b>NO-GO</b> |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| a. Receives completed military police paperwork from the platoon(s).<br>b. Consolidates information into company situation map.<br>c. Forwards situation map/paper work to Law and Order Detachment. |           |              |

| <b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b> |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
|--|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|--------------|
| <b>ITERATION</b>                                   | <b>1</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>M</b> | <b>TOTAL</b> |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                         |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                              |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                       |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| <b>References</b>  | <b>Task Number</b>   | <b>Task Title</b>   |
|--------------------|--|---|
| MP OES-CAPTAIN     | 191-400-0049   | Plan Utilization of Military Working Dogs for Battlefield Missions  |
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-332-5021<br>191-379-4416p<br>191-379-5402p<br>191-380-0109p              | Prepare/Update Enemy/Friendly Situation Map<br>Develop A Military Police Platoon Traffic Control Plan<br>Prepare A Patrol Distribution Plan<br>Plan Patrol Activities   |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-332-5000<br>071-332-5022   | Prepare An Operation Overlay<br>Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)   |
| STP MP OES-CAPTAIN | 191-400-0028<br>191-400-0038<br>191-400-0041<br>191-400-0045<br>191-400-0046 | Coordinate with Host Nation Police<br>Direct the Development of a Traffic Control Studies Plan<br>Establish Liaison with Other Military/Civilian Law Enforcement Agencies<br>Direct Patrol Activities<br>Analyze Crime Statistics to Determine Law Enforcement Problem Areas and Crime Trends |

### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Provide MP Investigative Support (19-2-41002)  
(FM 19-4)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** A military police company is directed by higher headquarters to provide military police investigative support within its area of responsibility. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The company operations center coordinates with other police agencies and host nations. The operations center ensures support in the company's area of responsibility.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. * Company Commander receives the mission from higher headquarters.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts mission analysis.</li> <li>b. Determines special requirements and equipment.</li> <li>c. Requests threat analysis.</li> <li>d. Determines commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).</li> <li>e. Conducts a map reconnaissance.</li> <li>f. Determines platoons area of responsibility.</li> <li>g. Issues a oral or written order.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. * First Sergeant provides support requirements.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures coordination for classes I, III, IV, V, VIII, and IX.</li> <li>b. Ensures coordination for morale support.</li> <li>c. Ensures platoon(s) have a plan for medical evacuation.</li> </ol> </li> <li>3. Operations center provides investigative support operations.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provides military police patrols in areas of responsibility.</li> <li>b. Establishes communication with military police patrols to include call signs.</li> <li>c. Provides on-duty military police investigators (MPI).</li> <li>d. Coordinates with USACIDC for on-duty agent.</li> <li>e. Coordinates with host nations police for local support.</li> </ol> </li> <li>4. Company performs investigative support mission.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Military police patrols will respond initially to the crime scene, then secure the scene and refer to the military police investigator (MPI).</li> <li>b. Military police investigator(s) will respond and be able to investigate the following incidents.                                     <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Drug and controlled substance abuse.</li> <li>(2) Possible rape offenses.</li> <li>(3) Suicide threats and attempts.</li> <li>(4) Reports of abnormal behavior.</li> <li>(5) Customs violations.</li> </ol> </li> <li>c. Refers serious incidents such as death, serious injury, and war crimes to the USACIDC for investigation.</li> </ol> </li> <li>5. Operations center receives information.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receives situation/spot reports from platoon(s).</li> <li>b. Consolidates information into company situation map.</li> <li>c. Forwards situation/spot reports to higher headquarters.</li> <li>d. Forwards updates overlay to higher headquarters.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |  | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number   | Task Title                                    |
|--------------------|---------------|---|
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-332-5021  | Prepare/Update Enemy/Friendly Situation Map   |
|                    | 191-377-5207p | Process Offenders                             |
|                    | 191-377-5213p | Process Juvenile Offenders                    |
|                    | 191-379-5402p | Prepare A Patrol Distribution Plan            |
|                    | 191-380-0109p | Plan Patrol Activities                        |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 071-332-5022  | Prepare A Battalion Situation Report (SITREP) |
| STP MP OES-CAPTAIN | 191-400-0036  | Direct the Conduct of Investigations          |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Battalion HQ  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Division PM Operations Section

**TASK:** Perform Unit Level Maintenance (43-2-C322)

- |                 |             |                  |
|-----------------|-------------|------------------|
| (FM 29-2)       | (FM 43-5)   | (AR 220-1)       |
| (AR 385-10)     | (AR 385-30) | (AR 385-40)      |
| (AR 700-138)    | (AR 750-1)  | (DA Pam 738-750) |
| (DA Pam 750-35) | (FM 20-22)  | (TC 43-35)       |

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The company is tactically deployed. Unit maintenance personnel receive requests to repair inoperative equipment. The unit maintenance area is established. Required tools, repair parts, equipment, and personnel are available. Operators are performing preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the equipment. Recovery operations with injured operators on board may be required. The company TSOP is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit vehicles and equipment are maintained in an operational ready status IAW DA standards. Time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in MOPP 4.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>* 1. Company commander/motor officer directs unit maintenance program.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitors implementation of unit maintenance program.</li> <li>b. Monitors unit operational levels by reviewing vehicle and equipment status reports.</li> <li>c. Identifies current or anticipated maintenance problems.</li> <li>d. Coordinates resolution of maintenance problems with higher headquarters.</li> <li>e. Requests control substitution approval from higher headquarters.</li> <li>f. Approves emergency field repairs.</li> <li>g. Prepares materiel condition status reports.</li> <li>h. Conducts periodic inspections of personnel and equipment to ensure safety program is enforced.</li> </ul> <p>* 2. Platoon/section leaders supervise operator maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Monitor performance of PMCS.</li> <li>b. Inspect vehicle, weapons and equipment.</li> <li>c. Coordinate maintenance assistance with the unit maintenance section.</li> <li>d. Monitor equipment repair parts status.</li> <li>e. Request approval for emergency field repairs.</li> <li>f. Maintain maintenance status of vehicle, weapons, and equipment.</li> <li>g. Provide input for materiel condition status report.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>3. Company personnel perform operator maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Perform PMCS.</li> <li>b. Notify supervisor of maintenance problems beyond operator's capability.</li> <li>c. Perform emergency field repairs.</li> <li>d. Assist unit maintenance personnel with repairs and services.</li> </ul> <p>* 4. Motor sergeant supervises unit maintenance personnel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Organizes unit maintenance personnel to perform unit maintenance activities.</li> <li>b. Supervises the Army maintenance management system (TAMMS) and prescribed load list (PLL) procedures for completeness and accuracy.</li> <li>c. Supervises repair and inspection procedures to ensure they are done safely and IAW appropriate references.</li> <li>d. Requests approval for BDAR from company commander when established repair procedures can not be used.</li> <li>e. Supervises BDAR procedures to ensure procedures are done IAW appropriate BDAR manuals.</li> <li>f. Requests approval to use controlled exchange from company commander when required repair parts are not available.</li> <li>g. Supervises use of controlled exchange for compliance with commander's guidance.</li> <li>h. Supervises recovery operations to ensure correct recovery and safety procedures are used.</li> <li>i. Supervises Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP) procedures to ensure testing of oil samples is done at required intervals.</li> <li>j. Coordinates maintenance status with platoon/section leaders.</li> <li>k. Provides unit maintenance status to company commander.</li> </ul> <p>5. Unit maintenance personnel repair organic equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Diagnose faults on inoperative equipment.</li> <li>b. Request required repair parts to complete the repair from PLL clerk.</li> <li>c. Repair equipment IAW applicable TM(s).</li> <li>d. Request approval for BDAR through the motor sergeant when established repair procedures can not be used.</li> <li>e. Perform BDAR IAW appropriate BDAR manual.</li> <li>f. Request approval for controlled exchange through motor sergeant when required repair parts are not available.</li> <li>g. Perform controlled exchange.</li> <li>h. Perform final inspection to ensure quality control of repairs.</li> <li>i. Record completed work on appropriate document(s).</li> <li>j. Employ safety procedures to minimize accidents.</li> </ul> <p>6. Unit maintenance personnel conduct transactions with support maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify category of repair.</li> <li>b. Correct unit level deficiencies.</li> <li>c. Prepare required documentation for submission to support maintenance.</li> <li>d. Evacuate equipment to support maintenance.</li> <li>e. Verify completion of repairs.</li> <li>f. Pick up equipment upon completion of repairs.</li> </ul> <p>7. Unit maintenance personnel perform administrative support functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintain PLL.</li> <li>b. Request repair parts for unit equipment.</li> <li>c. Perform required AOAP tasks.</li> <li>d. Turn in unserviceable repairable items.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>e. Maintain document registers.</li> <li>f. Maintain maintenance control records.</li> <li>g. Maintain technical publications on all organic equipment.</li> <li>h. Maintain tools and test equipment.</li> <li>i. Maintain power generation equipment.</li> </ul> <p>8. Maintenance personnel recover disabled vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verify location of disabled vehicles.</li> <li>b. Move on a concealed route to disabled vehicles.</li> <li>c. Inspect vehicles to determine required parts.</li> <li>d. Repair vehicles on site.</li> <li>e. Evacuate nonrepairable vehicles to unit maintenance area.</li> </ul> <p>9. Maintenance personnel react to battle damaged vehicle (recoverable) within a hostile area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Request covering fire.</li> <li>b. Move on a concealed route to disabled vehicle.</li> <li>c. Tow vehicle to a concealed location.</li> <li>d. Remove casualties from vehicle.</li> <li>e. Perform self aid/buddy aid.</li> <li>f. Request medical assistance, if required.</li> <li>g. Evacuate casualties.</li> <li>h. Perform battle damage assessment.</li> <li>i. Repair vehicle, if possible.</li> <li>j. Recover nonrepairable vehicle.</li> </ul> <p>10. Maintenance personnel react to battle damaged vehicle (unrecoverable) within a hostile area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Request direct and supporting fire.</li> <li>b. Move on a concealed route to disabled vehicle.</li> <li>c. Remove casualties from vehicle.</li> <li>d. Treat casualties.</li> <li>e. Request medical assistance, if required.</li> <li>f. Evacuate casualties.</li> <li>g. Request disposition of unrecoverable vehicle from company commander.</li> <li>h. Conduct salvage operations.</li> <li>i. Prepare vehicle for destruction.</li> <li>j. Destroy vehicle on order from commander or designated representative.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| STP 19-95B1-rev-SM | 113-600-3017 | Perform Unit Level Maintenance On Telephone Set TA-312/PT |



**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| <b>References</b>  | <b>Task Number</b> | <b>Task Title</b>                                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|--|
| STP 19-95B24-SM-TG | 071-004-0001       | Perform Operator Maintenance On An M9<br>Pistol      |
| STP 19-95C14-SM-TG | 071-311-2125       | Maintain An M203 Grenade Launcher                    |
|                    | 191-381-1252       | Perform Operator's Maintenance On 12-Gage<br>Shotgun |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS****NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** MP Platoon/Squad  
 Company  
 Platoon HQ  
 Division PM Operations Section

**TASK:** Occupy Assembly area (7-3-C228)  
 (FM 7-10) (FM 7-7) (FM 7-8)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The element has been given the order to move and occupy an assembly area in preparation for combat operations. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, CAS, and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The quartering party completes assembly area preparations and guides the element's main body into their respective positions NLT the time specified in the OPORD. Movement into the assembly area is uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the assembly area. The element's main body is not surprised by the enemy. The time required to prepare is increased when conducting this task in MOPP 4.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select quartering party personnel.</li> <li>b. Determine requirement for a combat vehicle and crew based on transportation and security requirements.</li> <li>c. Determine essential equipment needed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party. (04-5030.00-2013, 031-503-3308)                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify the location of the assembly area.</li> <li>b. Give specific instructions upon arrival at assembly area.</li> <li>c. State time of main body's arrival at the assembly area.</li> <li>d. Identify order of march.</li> <li>e. State NBC conditions.</li> <li>f. Issue a contingency plan in case of enemy contact.</li> <li>g. Establish MOPP level.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. The element quartering party moves along the route of march. (071-326-0515, 071-329-1006, 031-503-1031, 031-503-3001, 04-3302.01-0003, 071-326-0503)                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintain security.</li> <li>b. Reconnoiter the route of march from SP to RP.</li> <li>c. Monitor for NBC contamination.</li> <li>d. Mark obstacles and bypass routes.</li> <li>e. Report critical information to the element quartering party leader.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. The quartering party moves into the element assembly area and prepares the area for the element's arrival. (051-192-1022)                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select and mark routes from the RP to the new location.</li> <li>b. Select and post guides in time to meet the main body.</li> <li>c. Mark entrances, exits, and internal routes.</li> <li>d. Mark vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provides 360- degree security.</li> <li>e. Mark or remove mines and obstacles.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <p>f. Organize and post local security.</p> <p>5. Element occupies assembly area.</p> <p>    a. Move quartering party guides (waiting in covered and concealed positions) to guide element to selected or designated areas without halting.</p> <p>    b. Establish and maintain local security from air and ground forces.</p> <p>6. The element establishes the assembly area's perimeter. (071-326-5705, 071-326-5704, 071-326- 5703, 071-331-0852, 051-191-1362, 031-503-1031)</p> <p>    a. Establish the priority of work (may vary by unit SOP and METT-T).</p> <p>    b. Position vehicles/crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire.</p> <p>    c. Establish OPs on critical avenues of approach.</p> <p>    d. Establish communications between all positions. (Use wire communications if time /situation permits.)</p> <p>    e. Prepare range cards.</p> <p>    f. Construct individual and crew-served fighting positions.</p> <p>    g. Clear fields of fire.</p> <p>    h. Camouflage positions.</p> <p>    i. Emplace the chemical agent alarms and the early warning devices.</p> <p>7. The element performs internal operation of the assembly area. (01-4965.90-0001, 03-8310.00-9000, 04-3306.01-0007, 53-9001.18-0002, 071-331-0815)</p> <p>    a. Conduct preventive maintenance checks and services on vehicles and equipment.</p> <p>    b. Distribute ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment.</p> <p>    c. Establish personal hygiene and field sanitation site.</p> <p>    d. Maintain noise, light, and camouflage discipline.</p> <p>    e. Institute rest plan for element members and leaders.</p> <p>    f. Inspect assembly area.</p> <p>* 8. The element leader coordinates, as a minimum, with the element on the left and the right. (071-326-5775)</p> <p>    a. Establish responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements.</p> <p>    b. Exchange information on OP locations and element's signals.</p> <p>    c. Coordinate local counterattacks.</p> <p>    d. Develop a defensive plan and forward to higher headquarters.</p> <p>9. Leaders develop contingency plans.</p> <p>    a. Develop evacuation plan.</p> <p>    b. Develop plan of action on enemy contact.</p> <p>10. Unit conducts rehearsals.</p> <p>    a. Rehearse evacuation plan.</p> <p>    b. Rehearse actions on enemy contact.</p> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| <b>References</b> | <b>Task Number</b> | <b>Task Title</b>   |
|-------------------|--------------------|---|
| STP 21-1-SMCT     | 071-326-0503       | Move Over, Through, Or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)             |
|                   | 071-326-0513       | Select Temporary Fighting Positions                                     |
|                   | 071-326-5703       | Construct Individual Fighting Positions                                 |
|                   | 071-331-0815       | Practice Noise, Light, And Litter Discipline                            |
|                   | 071-331-0852       | Clear A Field Of Fire   |
| STP 21-24-SMCT    | 071-326-0515       | Select A Movement Route Using A Map                                     |
|                   | 071-326-5704       | Supervise Construction Of A Fighting Position                           |
|                   | 071-326-5705       | Establish An Observation Post   |
|                   | 071-326-5775       | Coordinate With An Adjacent Platoon                                     |
|                   | 071-329-1006       | Navigate From One Point On The Ground To Another Point While Dismounted |
|                   | 071-329-1006p      | Navigate From One Point On The Ground To Another Point While Dismounted |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 Desk Team  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team  
 Company  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 S1 Section  
 S2 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)

**TASK:** Treat Casualties (8-2-0003)

(AR 350-41)  
 (FM 3-4)  
 (FM 8-285)  
 (FM 8-10-6)

(AR 600-8-1)  
 (FM 8-10)  
 (FM 8-55)  
 (FM 8-230)

(FM 21-11)  
 (FM 8-10-7)  
 (FM 3-5)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit has sustained casualties. The unit has no organic medical personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Soldiers have been wounded and some may have chemical contamination or non-battle injuries. Some unit members have been assigned the additional duty of lifesavers. Unit members are performing first aid (self-aid/buddy aid) treatment and combat lifesavers are providing enhanced first aid treatment until medical treatment personnel arrive. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. Higher HQ TSOP and OPORD are available. SCPE is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. NOTE: This task should not be trained in MOPP4 except when treating NBC casualties. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit members provide treatment for casualties IAW FM 21-11, FM 8-285, and combat lifesaver certification standards. At MOPP level 4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to provide treatment and limits the type of treatment provided.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| * 1. Commander and leaders supervise first aid treatment of casualties. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Develop treatment plan.</li> <li>b. Monitor treatment for compliance with FM 21-11 and to ensure all casualties are treated.</li> <li>c. Direct employment of combat lifesavers to treat casualties.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>d. Report casualties, as required.</li> <li>e. Coordinate replenishment of Class VIII supplies with higher HQ LOG element IAW the TSOP.</li> <li>f. Direct distribution of Class VIII supplies and equipment IAW the TSOP.</li> <li>g. Enforce QC procedures for Class VIII items issued to unit elements.</li> </ul> <p>2. Unit personnel survey casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Check for responsiveness.</li> <li>b. Check for breathing.</li> <li>c. Check for bleeding.</li> <li>d. Check for head injury.</li> <li>e. Check for shock.</li> <li>f. Check for fractures, to include cervical spine and back fractures.</li> <li>g. Check for burns.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel administer lifesaving treatment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Clear all objects from throat of casualty.</li> <li>b. Use jaw thrust method to open airway if cervical spine injury is suspected.</li> <li>c. Perform mouth-to-mouth resuscitation IAW CPR procedures until casualty is breathing.</li> </ul> <p>4. Unit personnel control hemorrhage.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Apply dressing and bandages.</li> <li>b. Apply manual direct pressure to wound.</li> <li>c. Elevate extremities.</li> <li>d. Apply pressure dressing to wound.</li> <li>e. Apply tourniquet as last resort.</li> </ul> <p>5. Unit personnel dress wounds.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Apply dressing to an open chest wound, if possible.</li> <li>b. Apply dressing to an open abdominal wound.</li> <li>c. Apply dressing to an open head wound.</li> </ul> <p>6. Unit personnel splint suspected fractures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employ available materials to splint injury.</li> <li>b. Splint fracture in position found.</li> <li>c. Restrict movement of extremities.</li> <li>d. Check circulation for impairment.</li> </ul> <p>7. Unit personnel provide first aid treatment to casualties with burns.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Extinguish thermal burn agent(s).</li> <li>b. Remove chemical burn agent(s).</li> <li>c. Eliminate electrical burn source.</li> <li>d. Uncover burn unless stuck to clothes or a chemical environment exists.</li> <li>e. Apply field dressing, if appropriate.</li> </ul> <p>8. Unit personnel treat environmental injuries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Administer treatment for heat injuries.</li> <li>b. Administer first aid for frostbite.</li> </ul> <p>9. Unit personnel provide first aid treatment for chemical casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Take immediate protective steps to protect self and warn others IAW FM 8-285.</li> <li>b. Protect casualties from further contamination.</li> <li>c. Administer nerve agent antidote IAW and FM 8-285..</li> <li>d. Administer CANA, if required.</li> <li>e. Decontaminate casualties IAW FM 8-285, if necessary.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| 10. Unit personnel prevent shock. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Position casualties in the correct anti- shock position IAW FM 21-11.</li> <li>b. Loosen clothing and equipment.</li> <li>c. Prevent casualties from chilling or overheating.</li> <li>d. Calm casualties by reassuring them.</li> </ul> 11. Company Combat Lifesavers perform advanced treatment needed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluate casualties for condition and type treatment needed.</li> <li>b. Measure casualty's vital signs.</li> <li>c. Insert oropharyngeal airway in an unconscious casualty.</li> <li>d. Apply splint to a fractured limb.</li> <li>e. Administer first aid to chemical agent casualties.</li> <li>f. Initiate an intravenous infusion for hypovolemic shock.</li> <li>g. Identify environmental injuries.</li> <li>h. Treat environmental injuries.</li> <li>i. Manage BF casualties.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |  | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |

"\*" indicates a leader task step.

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

| References    | Task Number  | Task Title   |
|---------------|--------------|--|
| STP 21-1-SMCT | 081-831-1000 | Evaluate A Casualty  |
|               | 081-831-1003 | Clear An Object From The Throat Of A Conscious Casualty    |
|               | 081-831-1005 | Prevent Shock  |
|               | 081-831-1007 | Give First Aid For Burns                                   |
|               | 081-831-1008 | Give First Aid For Heat Injuries                           |
|               | 081-831-1009 | Give First Aid For Frostbite                               |
|               | 081-831-1016 | Put On A Field Or Pressure Dressing                        |
|               | 081-831-1017 | Put On A Tourniquet  |
|               | 081-831-1025 | Apply A Dressing To An Open Abdominal Wound                |
|               | 081-831-1026 | Apply A Dressing To An Open Chest Wound                    |
|               | 081-831-1031 | Administer First Aid To A Nerve Agent Casualty (Buddy-Aid) |
|               | 081-831-1033 | Apply A Dressing To An Open Head Wound                     |
|               | 081-831-1034 | Splint A Suspected Fracture                                |
|               | 081-831-1042 | Perform Mouth-To-Mouth Resuscitation                       |
|               | 121-030-3534 | Report Casualties  |

### OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

NONE:

- ELEMENTS:** Desk Team  
 MP Customs Supply Team  
 MP Senior Customs Inspection Team  
 MWD Kennel Master Team  
 MWD Explosive Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Narcotic Detachment/Patrol Team  
 MWD Patrol Dog Team  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 Platoon HQ  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 Company  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion HQ  
 Battalion  
 S2 Section  
 S1 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Detachment HQ  
 Operations Section  
 Traffic Accident Investigation Team  
 Military Police Investigation Team  
 Military Police Force Protection Team

- TASK:** Transport Casualties (8-2-C316)  
 (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10) (AR 600-8-1)  
 (FM 100-5) (FM 12-6) (FM 21-11)  
 (FM 3-4) (FM 3-5) (FM 57-38)  
 (FM 8-10) (FM 8-10-6) (FM 8-285)  
 (FM 8-55)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses have been reorganized. Casualties are transported from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. All methods of transport are employed. Some wounded EPW casualties may require transport. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. The TSOP and higher HQ OPORD are available. SCPE is on hand and/or field expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Casualties are transported as soon as tactical situation permits IAW the TSOP, OPORD, the provisions of the Geneva Conventions, and FM 8-10-6. At MOPP level 4, performance degradation factors increases the time required to transport casualties.



| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>1. * Commander and leader supervise transport of casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify casualty collection points.</li> <li>b. Identify transport requirements.</li> <li>c. Supervise preparation of casualties for transport.</li> <li>d. Coordinate transport of casualties from unit area with higher HQ PERS element IAW FM 8-10-6 and TSOP.</li> <li>e. Coordinate security requirements for the pick-up site with subelements and higher HQ OPS element.</li> <li>f. Disseminate transport information to unit personnel.</li> <li>g. Forward casualty feeder report and witness statements to higher HQ PERS element IAW FM 12-6 and TSOP.</li> </ul> <p>2. Unit personnel prepare casualties for transport.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provide first aid treatment to casualties.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: See task 8-2-0003 for detailed treatment procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Report casualties, as required.</li> <li>c. Collect classified document such as SOI/SSI, maps, overlays, and key lists.</li> <li>d. Secure custody of organizational equipment IAW TSOP.</li> <li>e. Forward casualty feeder reports to unit HQ IAW TSOP.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using manual carriers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select type of manual carry appropriate to situation and injury.</li> <li>b. Transport casualty without causing further injury IAW FM 8-10-6.</li> </ul> <p>4. Unit personnel transport casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify litter team(s).</li> <li>b. Construct improvised litter from available material, as required.</li> <li>c. Secure casualty on litter.</li> <li>d. Transport casualty without causing further injury IAW FM 8-10-6.</li> </ul> <p>5. Unit personnel transport casualties to an MTF using available vehicles.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Load maximum number of casualties IAW FM 8-10-6.</li> <li>b. Secure casualties in vehicle.</li> <li>c. Transport casualties without causing further injury IAW FM 8-10-6.</li> </ul> <p>6. * Commander and leaders request aeromedical evacuation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Transmit request IAW FM 8-10-6, OPROD, and TSOP.</li> <li>b. Select landing site, which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and take-off IAW FM 8-10-6 and FM 57-38.</li> <li>c. Supervise removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about prior to aircraft arrival.</li> <li>d. Supervise security of landing site.</li> </ul> <p>7. Unit personnel assist in loading ambulance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employ proper carrying and loading techniques IAW FM 8-10-6.</li> <li>b. Load casualties in the sequence directed by crew.</li> <li>c. Load casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort.</li> <li>d. Employ safety procedures IAW AR 385-10, FM 8-10-6, and TSOP.</li> <li>e. Employ environmental protection procedures IAW AR 200-1 and TSOP.</li> </ul> <p>8. Unit personnel transport chemically contaminated casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assume MOPP 4.</li> <li>b. Mark contaminated casualties IAW the TSOP.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| <b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>   | <b>GO</b> | <b>NO-GO</b> |
|--|-----------|--------------|
| c. Notify supporting MTFD that contaminated casualty are en route to their location.<br>d. Transport casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station.<br>e. Protect casualties from further contamination during transport.<br><br>9. Unit personnel transport EPW casualties.<br>a. Maintain security of EPW casualties IAW TSOP.<br>b. Search EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance prior to evacuation.<br>c. Transport EPW casualties IAW provisions of the Geneva Conventions and the TSOP. |           |              |

| <b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b> |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
|--|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|--------------|
| <b>ITERATION</b>                                   | <b>1</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>M</b> | <b>TOTAL</b> |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                         |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                              |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                       |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References         | Task Number  | Task Title  |
|--------------------|--------------|---|
| STP 19-95D24-SM-TG | 031-503-1012 | Protect Yourself From Chemical And Biological Injury/Contamination Using Your M24 Or M25-Series Protective Mask With Hood |
| STP 21-1-SMCT      | 031-503-1004 | Protect Yourself From Chemical And Biological Injury/ Contamination Using Your M17-Series Protective Mask With Hood       |
|                    | 031-503-1015 | Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination With Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear                       |
|                    | 031-503-1025 | Protect Yourself From Chemical And Biological Injury/ Contamination Using Your M40-Series Protective Mask With Hood       |
|                    | 031-503-1028 | Protect Yourself From Chemical And Biological Injury/ Contamination Using Your M42 Protective Mask With Hood              |
| STP 21-24-SMCT     | 081-831-1040 | Transport A Casualty Using A One-Man Carry  |
|                    | 081-831-1041 | Transport A Casualty Using A Two-Man Carry Or An Improvised Litter  |
|                    | 081-831-0101 | Request Medical Evacuation  |
|                    | 121-030-3534 | Report Casualties   |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

- ELEMENTS:** S4 Section  
 Company  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)  
 Detachment HQ  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 3 Guard Platoons  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 S2 Section  
 S1 Section  
 S3 Section  
 Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 PM Section

**TASK:** Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction And Prevention Procedures (8-2-R303)  
 (FM 22-9) (FM 3-4) (FM 3-5)  
 (FM 8-10)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Combat health support (CHS) operations have commenced. Unit personnel are deployed in support of higher HQ operations. The unit's sleep plan and SOPs to manage BF soldiers have been deployed. Personnel have been cross-trained on critical tasks. Operations are continuous over a prolonged period of time causing stressful situations for personnel. The commander has directed that battlefield stress management procedures be implemented. SCPE is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. NOTE: Due to the technical knowledge and skills required to perform some MOS-specific tasks, caution must be exercised when cross-training personnel. For instance, nonmedical personnel cannot be cross-trained to perform MOS-specific medical tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Unit applies techniques that counter battlefield stress. At MOPP level 4, performance degradation factors increase the need for stress prevention implementation.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| * 1. Commander and leaders perform stress prevention leader actions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Issue warning orders, OPORDs, and FRAGOs to the lowest possible level.</li> <li>b. Provide soldiers an accurate assessment of the friendly and enemy situation.</li> <li>c. Brief leader's intention to all unit personnel.</li> <li>d. Speak positively concerning the unit's missions, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>e. Encourage a positive attitude throughout the unit.</li> <li>f. Institute an information dissemination plan designed to quell and prevent rumors.</li> <li>g. Inform personnel of availability of religious support.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 2. Commander and leaders implement sleep plan.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provide a safe and secure area away from vehicles and other high-noise activities.</li> <li>b. Adjust the sleep plan as dictated by tactical situation.</li> <li>c. Enforce the sleep plan IAW the TSOP.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 3. Leaders implement tasks rotation or restructuring procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Alternate cross-trained unit personnel on critical tasks, as required.</li> <li>b. Rotate unit personnel between demanding and nondemanding tasks.</li> <li>c. Assign two soldiers to function independently on tasks requiring a high degree of accuracy.</li> <li>d. Adjust task rotation policies and procedures to the tactical situation.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Leaders implement stress-coping and management techniques.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Integrate new unit members into the unit immediately.</li> <li>b. Assist soldiers in resolving homefront problems.</li> <li>c. Implement a buddy system to observe signs of stress or BF among soldiers and leaders.</li> <li>d. Provide instruction on relaxation techniques to all personnel prior to deployment.</li> <li>e. Conduct after-action debriefings.</li> <li>f. Conduct unit award, decoration, recognition, and memorial ceremonies.</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 5. Commander and leaders implement stress control techniques.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Implement a plan to deal with mild, seriously stressed, or BF cases.</li> <li>b. Assign soldiers showing signs of severe stress or BF to simple tasks.</li> <li>c. Direct personnel to be supportive of stressed or BF soldiers.</li> <li>d. Refer soldiers showing signs of serious stress or BF supporting MTF for evaluation.</li> <li>e. Reintegrate RTD soldiers into their specific element.</li> </ul> </li> <li>6. Unit personnel employ stress prevention measures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintain a positive attitude concerning the unit's mission, purpose, and abilities.</li> <li>b. Comply with commander's sleep plan.</li> <li>c. Identify other soldiers with signs of stress or BF.</li> <li>d. Provide immediate buddy aid support.</li> <li>e. Report signs of stress of BF in other soldiers to immediate supervisor.</li> <li>f. Accept new unit members immediately.</li> <li>g. Practice relaxation techniques at appropriate times and places.</li> <li>h. Participate in buddy systems and after-action debriefings.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

- ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Platoon HQ  
 MP Platoon/Squad  
 HHC, MP BN (I/R)  
 Company HQ  
 MP Confinement Facility Teams  
 HHC, MP BN (EPW/CI)  
 HHC, MP Battalion (Confinement)  
 Division PM Operations Section  
 Battalion  
 Battalion HQ  
 S2 Section  
 S1 Section  
 S3 Section  
 S4 Section  
 PM Section  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Branch Camp Team)  
 MP Detachment (EPW/CI Processing Squad)  
 MP Company (Escort Guard)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (Confinement)  
 MP Detachment (I/R) (EPW/CI)

**TASK:** Perform Field Sanitation Functions (8-2-R315)  
 (AR 200-1) (AR 385-10) (FM 10-52)  
 (FM 21-10) (FM 3-4) (FM 3-5)  
 (FM 8-10) (FM 8-10-7) (AR 40-5)  
 (FM 21-10-1)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)  
**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** Health hazards exist which require field sanitation measures. The unit is in the field without permanent sanitation or water facilities. The commander has selected and trained the unit FST. The CHS plan, TSOP, and higher HQ OPORD are available. All required sanitation equipment is available. Field sanitation measures are continuous and are performed simultaneously with other operational tasks. SCPE is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Field sanitation measures are accomplished IAW TSOP, OPORD, and FM 21-10. FST performs field sanitation measures IAW TSOP, FM 21-10, and commander's guidance. At MOPP level 4, only minimum essential field sanitation activities are performed.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| * 1. Commander directs field sanitation measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Direct field sanitation activities to counter the medical threat.</li> <li>b. Monitor field sanitation activities for compliance with FM 21-10 and TSOP.</li> <li>c. Enforce individual field sanitation measures.</li> <li>d. Request assistance from the PVNTMED elements for sanitation problems that are beyond the expertise of the unit's FST IAW TSOP and OPORD.</li> <li>e. Correct field sanitation deficiencies.</li> <li>f. Report field sanitation deficiencies which cannot be corrected by unit personnel to the FST.</li> </ul> |    |       |

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES  | GO | NO-GO |
|--|----|-------|
| <p>g. Enforce safety procedures IAW AR 385-10 and TSOP.<br/>                     h. Enforce environmental protection procedures IAW AR 200-1 and TSOP.</p> <p>2. FST supervises unit field sanitation measures.</p> <p>a. Maintain field sanitation basic load IAW AR 40-5 and FM 21-10-1..<br/>                     b. Supervise distribution of field sanitation basic load items IAW AR 40-5 and FM 21-10-1.<br/>                     c. Test unit water supply for chlorine residual level IAW FM 21-10-1 and TSOP.<br/>                     d. Monitor personnel to ensure use of personal protective measures against arthropods (skin, clothing, and bednet repellent) and rodents IAW applicable directives and commander's guidance.<br/>                     e. Conduct rodents surveys, as required.<br/>                     f. Monitor personnel for employment of correct hygiene measures.<br/>                     g. Monitor waster facilities and procedures for compliance with AR 40-5, FM 21-10-1, and TSOP, as required.<br/>                     h. Inspect latrines and urinals IAW TSOP.<br/>                     i. Inspect liquid and solid waste disposal facilities to ensure compliance with AR 40-5, FM 21-10-1, and TSOP. TSOP.<br/>                     j. Inspect handwashing devices IAW FM 21-10-1 and TSOP.<br/>                     k. Inspect transport, storage, preparation, and serving of food for compliance with FM 21-10-1 and TSOP.<br/>                     l. Provide advice, recommendations, and training requirements to the commander<br/>                     m. Enforce safety procedures IAW TSOP and commander's guidance.<br/>                     n. Enforce environmental protection procedures IAW AR 200-1 and TSOP.</p> <p>3. Unit elements employ field sanitation measures.</p> <p>a. Maintain prescribed load of water purification materials IAW FM 21-10 and TSOP.<br/>                     b. Prepare unpotable water for personal use IAW FM 21-10 and TSOP.<br/>                     c. Consume only water designated as potable.<br/>                     d. Maintain latrines and hand washing facilities IAW FM 21-10 and TSOP.<br/>                     e. Employ preventive measures against cold and heat injuries.<br/>                     f. Employ personal hygiene measures.<br/>                     g. Employ preventive measures against arthropod and rodent infestation, to include using skin, clothing and bednet repellent.<br/>                     h. Report field sanitation deficiencies to FST.<br/>                     i. Employ safety procedures IAW AR 385-10 and TSOP.<br/>                     j. Enforce environmental protection procedures IAW AR 200-1 and TSOP.</p> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | M | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |

“\*” indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References     | Task Number  | Task Title   |
|----------------|--------------|--|
| STP 21-24-SMCT | 081-831-0102 | Supervise Unit Preventive Medicine And Field Sanitation Procedures |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENTS:** Company  
 Division PM Operations Section

**TASK:** Perform Unit Communications (19-2-0031)  
 (FM 24-18) (FM 24-16) (FM 24-20)  
 (FM 5-20)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** The MP company is employed in support of the corps. All elements of the MP company are established in AOs or with specific missions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** Continuous secure and/or non-secure radio communications are established and maintained throughout the company and with the battalion headquarters. Company elements have established and are maintaining wire communications. Communications security (COMSEC) measures and electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM) are implemented. Interference reports are submitted to battalion as needed.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 1. Communications supervisor plans and supervises communication support.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Advise commander and staff on all communications matters.</li> <li>b. Plan and supervise the integration of the unit communications system with those of higher, lower, and adjacent headquarters.</li> <li>c. Plan and supervise communications support for movement.</li> </ul> </li> <li>2. Communications section establishes and maintains radio communications network.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establish net control station (NCS).</li> <li>b. NCS ensures unit elements comply with CEOI.</li> <li>c. Establish radio relay sites to ensure communications throughout the radio network.</li> <li>d. Ensure radios throughout the company are sited to allow reliable transmission and reception.</li> <li>e. Ensure use of preventive ECCM.</li> <li>f. Ensure use of remedial ECCM.</li> </ul> </li> <li>3. NCS reports attempted jamming/interference.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure affected operators submit beaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) reports to NCS by secure means.</li> <li>b. NCS submits MIJI reports by secure means to battalion. _</li> </ul> </li> <li>* 4. Communications supervisor establishes and supervises COMSEC procedures.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure COMSEC items and materials are secured.</li> <li>b. Program COMSEC equipment for secure operations using key list or keying devices.</li> <li>c. Ensure all elements use authentication procedures.</li> <li>d. Ensure all elements use approved codes and/or brevity lists.</li> </ul> </li> <li>5. Establish radio sites.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure transmitters are sited to use available natural or man-made obstacles to mask the radio signal from the enemy.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |    |       |



| <b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>  | <b>GO</b> | <b>NO-GO</b> |
|---|-----------|--------------|
| b. Ensure transmitter are sited away from the unit headquarters and the antenna are remoted.<br>c. Ensure cover and concealment of radio sites.<br>d. Switch radios to generator power without interruption of communications.<br>e. Plan alternate sites for radio transmitters.<br><br>6. Establish and maintain wire communications.<br>a. Install and operate switchboard.<br>b. Install telephones and field wire in support of the company CP.<br>c. Ensure telephones and field wire are installed in platoon(s) operating apart from the company HQ.<br>d. Ensure damaged field wire is repaired.<br>e. Ensure field wire is recovered without damage upon displacement of the unit or unit element.<br><br>7. Communications section maintains communication equipment.<br>a. Provide assistance for operator maintenance.<br>b. Perform Unit Level Maintenance.<br>c. Coordinate for DS/GS maintenance. |           |              |

| <b>TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK</b> |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
|--|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|--------------|
| <b>ITERATION</b>                                   | <b>1</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>M</b> | <b>TOTAL</b> |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                         |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                              |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                       |          |          |          |          |          |          |              |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

#### **SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| <b>References</b>  | <b>Task Number</b> | <b>Task Title</b>   |
|--------------------|--------------------|---|
| STP 19-95B1-SM     | 113-594-2014       | Operate Switchboard, Telephone, Manual Sb-22(*)/Pt  |
|                    | 113-600-3017       | Perform Unit Level Maintenance On Telephone Set Ta-312/Pt   |
| STP 19-95BI-SM     | 113-573-6001p      | Recognize Electronic Countermeasures (ECCM) And Implement Electronic Counter-Countermeasures (ECCM) |
|                    | 113-573-8006       | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)   |
|                    | 113-573-8006p      | Use An Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)   |
| STP 19-95C14-SM-TG | 113-594-2014p      | Operate Switchboard, Telephone, Manual Sb-22(*)/Pt  |
|                    | 113-600-3017p      | Perform Unit Level Maintenance (ULM) On Telephone Set Ta-312/Pt                                     |

#### **OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

**ELEMENT:** Company

**TASK:** Issue Operations Order (19-2-60009)  
 (FM 101-5) (FM 100-5) (FM 63-3)

**ITERATION:** 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

**CONDITIONS:** An MP unit is deployed in support of a corps. The unit has received an OPORD from higher headquarters. Mission analysis has been completed and the commander has provided his concept of the operations to the staff. The unit commander directs the unit S3 to prepare an OPORD. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

**TASK STANDARDS:** The OPORD is complete and has been issued to the affected elements. No more than one-third of the available preparation time is used for planning and issuing the order.

| TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES   | GO | NO-GO |
|---|----|-------|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. S-3 coordinates with staff sections for their input to the OPORD.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identifies any orders, written or oral, the staff has issued which may apply to the OPORD.</li> <li>b. Coordinates with S2 for the enemy forces portion of paragraph 1 of the OPORD.</li> <li>c. Coordinates with S1, S4, and the unit XO for service support information for paragraph 4 of the OPORD.</li> <li>d. Coordinates with Signal Officer for signal portion of paragraph 5 of the OPORD.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. S-3 prepares and issues the OPORD.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assigns an OPORD number.</li> <li>b. Develops task organization based on the commander's decision and concept.</li> <li>c. Identifies any references, maps, charts, overlays or other documents needed to understand the order.</li> <li>d. Extracts friendly forces information for paragraph 1 of the OPORD from the brigade OPORD. Ensures information addresses higher, adjacent, supporting, and reinforcing elements.</li> <li>e. Determines attachments and detachments, and the effective times of those attachments/detachments, from the brigade OPORD.</li> <li>f. Develops the mission statement for paragraph 2 of the OPORD. Bases the statement on the essential tasks determined by the unit commander.</li> <li>g. Develops the execution paragraph for paragraph 3 of the OPORD from the brigade OPORD and the commander's concept. Ensures it clarifies the purpose of the operation and provides enough detail to permit subordinate and supporting units to act appropriately without additional specific instructions.</li> <li>h. Assembles the OPORD in the standard five-paragraph format.</li> </ol> </li> <li>* 3. Unit commander issues the OPORD to the affected units.                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Commander approves OPFOR prepared by S3.</li> <li>b. Commander directs that OPORD be issued to affected units.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |    |       |

| TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|--|-------|
| ITERATION                                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |  | TOTAL |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED                  |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
| TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"                       |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |
| TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"                |   |   |   |   |   |  |       |

"\*\*" indicates a leader task step.

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

| References      | Task Number   | Task Title  |
|-----------------|---------------|---|
| STP 19-95B45-SM | 071-332-5001  | Prepare, Assemble, And Distribute An Operation Plan/Operation Order/Annex |
|                 | 071-332-5001p | Prepare, Assemble, And Distribute An Operation Plan/Operation Order/Annex |
| STP 21-24-SMCT  | 071-332-5000  | Prepare An Operation Overlay  |

**OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS**

**NONE:**

## CHAPTER 6

### EXTERNAL EVALUATION

**6-1. General.** An external evaluation is conducted to evaluate the company's ability to perform its mission. This chapter is a guide for preparing an external evaluation. Using units may modify the evaluation based on METT-TC and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. The company will be evaluated using the standards of selected T&EOs contained in Chapter 5 of this MTP. The evaluation will evaluate the company and each platoon of the company. The evaluation should employ the use of a realistic opposing force and the use of MILES. At the completion of the evaluation, the commander should be able to identify the strengths and weaknesses of the company. These strengths and weaknesses are the basis for future training and resource allocation.

**6-2. Preparing the Evaluation.** The commander must standardize the evaluation procedures to accurately measure the platoon's capabilities.

a. **Preparing the Evaluation Instrument.** The sample evaluation scenario outlined in Figure 6-1 contains the mission as well as the appropriate tasks necessary to develop the scenario and execute the evaluation. Because it is not possible or desirable to evaluate every task, selective tailoring is required. The following procedures should be considered when developing the evaluation:

(1) Identify the mission to be evaluated for each echelon or element. Record the selected missions on the Unit Proficiency Worksheet (Figure 6-2).

(2) List each mission on a separate Task Summary Sheet (Figure 6-3).

(3) Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the Task Summary Sheet (Figure 6-3). These forms will be used only by the evaluators to record the results of the evaluation.

(4) Compile the selected missions and tasks in the order that they will logically occur in a detailed scenario. Divide the scenario into parts which can be interrupted at logical points to assess MILES casualties and conduct in-progress AARs.

b. **Forecasting and Requisitioning Resources.** Adequate training ammunition, equipment, and supplies must be forecasted and requested. (See Figure 6-4.)

c. **Selecting and Preparing the Field Evaluation Site.** Required size, type of terrain, OPFOR requirements, and administrative requirements are the basis for site selection. The OPFOR is positioned according to threat doctrine. The site must provide space for the administrative area required to support the evaluation.

| EVENT      | ACTION   | DURATION | TIME FRAME   |
|------------|--|----------|--------------|
| 1          | Administrative preparation                                     | 8 hours  | Before start |
| 2          | Issue order  | 1 hour   | Day 1 1900   |
| 3          | Conduct vehicle tactical road march (day and/or night)         | 1 hour   | 2000         |
| 4          | Occupy Assembly Area (night)                                   | 1 hour   | 2100         |
| PART 1     |  |          |              |
| 5          | Receive warning order  | 1 hour   | 2200         |
| 6          | Supervise MP Support to Rear Operations                        | 6 hours  | 2300         |
| 7          | Supervise Route Reconnaissance and Surveillance                | 3 hours  | Day 2 0500   |
| 8          | Supervise Area and Zone Reconnaissance                         | 3 hours  | 0800         |
| 9          | Conduct Sustaining Operations                                  | 1 hour   | 0900         |
| PART 2     |  |          |              |
| 10         | Supervise MP Operations in an NBC Environment                  | 5 hours  | 1400         |
| 11         | Conduct Sustaining Operations                                  | 1 hour   | 1500         |
| PART 3     |  |          |              |
| 12         | Supervise Route Regulation and Enforcement and Route Signing   | 1 hour   | 1600         |
| 13         | Supervise Dislocated Civilian and Straggler Control Operations | 3 hours  | 1900         |
| 14         | Supervise Area Security Operations                             | 8 hours  | 0300         |
| 15         | Conduct Sustaining Operations                                  | 1 hour   | 0400         |
| PART 4     |  |          |              |
| 16         | Supervise Movement to Contact                                  | 2 hours  | Day 3 2400   |
| 17         | Monitor a Hasty Attack   | 1 hour   | 0200         |
| 18         | Supervise Collecting Point and Holding Area Operations         | 1 hour   | 0300         |
| 19         | Conduct Sustaining Operations                                  | 1 hour   | 0400         |
| 20         | Move to AAR Site and Conduct AAR                               | 3 hours  | 0700         |
| TOTAL TIME |  | 52 hours |              |

**Figure 6-1. Sample Evaluation Scenario**

| UNIT PROFICIENCY WORKSHEET |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| UNIT                       |                        |
| MISSION                    | EVALUATION<br>GO NO-GO |
|                            |                        |
| Evaluator Comments:        |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            |                        |
|                            | Evaluator's Signature  |

Figure 6-2. Unit Proficiency Worksheet.

| TASK SUMMARY SHEET   |        |                        |
|--|--------|------------------------|
| MISSION:   |        |                        |
| Task Titles  | Number | Evaluation<br>GO NO-GO |
|  |        |                        |
|  |        | Evaluator's Signature  |
| <p>NOTE: A separate Task Summary Sheet will be prepared for each mission evaluated.<br/>                     Evaluator's comments may be placed on an enclosure to the Task Summary Sheet.</p> |        |                        |

Figure 6-3. Sample Task Summary Sheet.

| ESTIMATED SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS        |                         |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ammunition and Pyrotechnics           | Quantity                |
| 5.56-mm blank, M16                    | 240 rounds per weapon   |
| 5.56-mm blank, M249                   | 400 rounds per weapon   |
| 5.56-mm blank, M-4                    | 240 rounds per weapon   |
| Smoke grenades                        | 2 per soldier           |
| Hand grenades, inert                  | 2 per soldier           |
| Simulator, artillery                  | 32 per company          |
| Simulator, booby trap                 | 24 per company          |
| CS grenades                           | 24 per company          |
| Simulator projectile, ground burst    | 3 per exercise          |
| Signal, illumination, white parachute | 1 per exercise          |
| NBC Equipment                         | Quantity                |
| M9 chemical detection paper           | 1 each                  |
| Chemlight                             | 1 box                   |
| XM22 chemical alarm                   | 18 per company          |
| AN/VDR-2 radiac set                   | 44 per company          |
| Other Equipment                       | Quantity                |
| Blank adapter                         | 1 set per weapon        |
| BA 200, 6-volt batteries              | 48                      |
| BA 3090, 9-volt batteries             | 560                     |
| MILES                                 | 1 set per soldier/OPFOR |
| Controller gun                        | 1 per evaluator         |
| Small-arms alignment fixture          | 1 per company           |
| Electronic system test set            | 1 per company           |

**Figure 6-4. Estimated Support Requirements for a Company.**

d. Planning Indirect Fire Simulation. Because it greatly influences the outcome of battles, reaction to indirect fire is an important consideration of the evaluation. Indirect fire simulation requires considerable planning to achieve realism.

(1) The fire marker control system outlined in TC 25-6 is a recommended method of simulating indirect fire. Because of the amount of required resources, this method may be difficult to support.

(2) The commander may use the evaluation control headquarters method or the simulation without OPFOR method to evaluate the unit's ability to react to indirect fire. If the evaluation control headquarters method is used, the OPFOR will initiate a call for fire to the evaluation control headquarters



which will simulate the tactical FDC. The control headquarters would then relay the delivery data to the OCs that would mark the impact of the round with artillery simulators and assess appropriate casualties. If an OPFOR is not used, the OC may ignite artillery simulators and observe the unit's reactions. The FM 25 series provide assessment and computation tables which may be used to determine casualties. Figure 6-5 provides the burst radius and sheaf size of various indirect fire weapons. Indirect fire simulation must be realistic and limited to what the unit could reasonably expect under combat conditions.

| BURSTING RADIUS AND SHEAF SIZES OF INDIRECT FIRE WEAPONS |              |             |
|--|--------------|-------------|
| WEAPON   | BURST RADIUS | SHEAF SIZE  |
| 81-mm mortar   | 25 m         | 100 x 50 m  |
| 107-mm mortar  | 50 m         | 200 x 150 m |
| 105-mm howitzer  | 30 m         | 200 x 150 m |
| 155-mm howitzer  | 50 m         | 300 x 200 m |

**Figure 6-5. Bursting Radius.**

### **6-3. Selecting the Observer Controllers.**

a. The OCs must know the unit's missions, organization, equipment, and employment. The senior OC should be at least equal in rank to the unit commander and have successfully performed in that specific or similar TOE position.

b. The following are desired minimum rank and experience requirements for the OCs:

(1) Commander OC will be an officer with company commander experience.

(2) Platoon or section OCs will be lieutenants or NCOs with platoon or section experience.

(3) Recorder will be an officer or NCO at the evaluation control headquarters who receives "kill" information or results and time data from the OCs.

**6-4. Training the Observer Controllers.** The OCs standardize administration of the evaluation by understanding the following three functional areas:

a. Evaluation Design. Each part is designed to evaluate specific missions or tasks within the overall scenario. The OCs must thoroughly understand the evaluation and correctly implement it.

b. MILES. Each OC, regardless of position, must have full knowledge of the unit's weapons and vehicles and must also thoroughly understand the MILES system being used. The unit commander is responsible for ensuring that all MILES equipment is functional before each part of the scenario.

c. Evaluation Control System. This system ensures that the evaluation is administered in a consistent and standardized manner and that correct data is collected for the final evaluation. It includes the following elements:

- (1) Rules of engagement.
- (2) OC duties and responsibilities.
- (3) Communication systems.
- (4) Evaluation data collection plan.

#### **6-5. Recording External Evaluation Information.**

a. The evaluating HQ develops the data recording instruments for the OCs. The Unit Data Sheet, Figure 6-6, presents demographic information which may reflect on a unit's performance. The Environmental Data Sheet, Figure 6-7, documents weather information in order to compare missions conducted under differing environmental conditions. The Personnel and Equipment Loss Report, Figure 6-8, documents information that may affect the unit's degree of success during engagements with the OPFOR.

b. The senior OC has overall responsibility for preparation of the external evaluation. This evaluation is based on senior OC's findings and input from the subordinate OCs. Subordinate OCs use the task evaluation criteria (T&EOs from Chapter 5 and Task Summary Sheets) to determine overall proficiency in their particular areas. The senior OC compiles the external evaluation results as prescribed by the evaluating commander. Deviations from the task standard assessed by the platoon OC may be addressed in the senior OC comments portion of the Unit Proficiency Worksheet.

| UNIT DATA SHEET                                |             |                              |
|--|-------------|------------------------------|
| 1. UNIT DESIGNATION:                           |             |                              |
| 2. UNIT LEADERS: (Circle most correct answer). |             |                              |
| <b>POSITION</b>                                | <b>RANK</b> | <b>TIME IN UNIT (MONTHS)</b> |
| COMMANDER                                      | CPT/1LT     | 1-3 4-6 7-12 13-18 or more   |
| 1SGT   | 1SGT/SFC    | 1-3 4-6 7-12 13-18 or more   |
| SUPPLY SGT                                     | SSG/SGT     | 1-3 4-6 7-12 13-18 or more   |
| SEC SGT  | SFC/SSG     | 1-3 4-6 7-12 13-18 or more   |
| MOTOR SGT                                      | SFC/SSG     | 1-3 4-6 7-12 13-18 or more   |
| 3. UNIT STRENGTH (Excluding leaders): _____    |             |                              |
| 4. EQUIPMENT SHORTAGE (Major items): _____     |             |                              |
| _____  |             |                              |
| _____  |             |                              |
| _____  |             |                              |
| _____  |             |                              |
| _____  |             |                              |
| _____  |             |                              |
| 5. COMMENTS: _____                             |             |                              |
| _____  |             |                              |
| _____  |             |                              |
| _____  |             |                              |
| _____  |             |                              |
| _____  |             |                              |

Figure 6-6. Unit Data Sheet.

| ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET  |
|---|
| <p>MODULE NUMBER AND DESCRIPTION:</p> <p>DATE/TIME MODULE STARTED:</p> <p>DATE/TIME MODULE ENDED:</p> <p>1. WEATHER CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)</p> <p>Clear Partly Cloudy Hazy Raining Snowing Fog</p> <p>Other (Describe):</p> <p>Temperature:</p> <p>2. GROUND CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)</p> <p>Dry Wet Ice Snow Other (Describe):</p> <p>3. LIGHT CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">A. Day Night</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">B. Moon Phase: None 1/4 1/2 3/4 Full</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">C. Average range visibility due to light:</p> <p>4. TERRAIN: (Circle appropriate description)</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">A. Flat Rolling Mountainous Jungle Desert Urban Arctic</p> <p>Other (Describe):</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">B. Top soil composition:</p> <p>Sandy Rocky Clay Other (Describe):</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">C. Average range of visibility due to terrain:</p> <p>5. REMARKS:</p> |

**Figure 6-7. Environmental Data Sheet.**



**6-6. Selecting and Training the OPFOR.** The selection and training of OPFOR are crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. The OPFOR provides one of the control measures that influences the conditions under which the evaluation is administered. Each company should face an opponent which realistically resembles the threat in strength, weapons, and skill.

a. Selection. Any group of qualified skill level 1 or 2 soldiers can serve as OPFOR. Ideally, they should be a small, cohesive unit under the control of their leader or commander.

b. Training. The OPFOR must understand the following six major areas:

- (1) Installation and operation of the MILES devices.
- (2) Rules of engagement.
- (3) Threat small unit tactics.
- (4) Training scenarios.
- (5) OPFOR weapons and equipment, if available.
- (6) Safety.

c. OPFOR Strength.

(1) Offense. Using MILES, the unit should outnumber the OPFOR three to one if an attack is to be successful. If the OPFOR is stronger than this ratio, only the most exceptional company will overcome them. They must also be armed with weapons capable of defeating any of the company's assets. As a general rule, the OPFOR should be strong enough to offer the company a realistic challenge, but one that they can defeat when proper tactics are employed.

(2) Defense. The OPFOR, at a minimum, should have a three-to-one ratio of superiority, because anything less will not have sufficient weapons and ammunition to conduct successful attack. They must be more than merely a series of targets to be destroyed. The OPFOR should be allowed to plan their own attack for each mission and should not be forced into a "canned" attack that the company will quickly defend. Once the OPFOR establishes their plan, they must use the same plan for all other like units for that event to maintain the objectivity and standardization of the evaluation.

**6-7. Conducting the Evaluation.** The evaluation is divided into three distinct areas. Each requires different degrees of preparation and coordination:

a. Pre-evaluation.

(1) The senior OC and all other OCs must recon the evaluation area. They must know the location of the unit's boundaries, disposition of the OPFOR, and the most likely avenues of approach throughout the field evaluation site's area of operations.

(2) The unit must prepare an OPORD and FRAGO to be used to control the exercise. These can be prepared by using the skeleton orders contained in the STXs found in Chapter 4.

(3) Company preparatory activities include installing and troubleshooting MILES equipment, loading combat vehicles, conducting inspections, and performing other logistical and administrative actions.

(4) The OPFOR is placed in position and briefed while the company is conducting its preparatory activities.

(5) In this evaluation scenario, the platoon is issued a march order to move to an assembly area. When the assembly area has been occupied, the OPORD is issued. Once the company commander has issued the OPORD and time has been allotted for issuing platoon and squad orders, the OCs should make a last functional check of the MILES equipment.

b. Evaluation.

(1) The evaluation team controls the evaluation in two ways: First, it uses measures established in both the movement order and in paragraphs 3 and 5 of the OPORD or the FRAGO. Second, the team controls the evaluation through the company commander on the company net. The team does not control in the traditional sense; instead it accompanies the unit as observers. Only the senior OC has direct verbal contact with the company commander. All other OCs do not speak to, aid, advise, point out positions, or in any way influence the company's performance, except for a possible or actual safety issue or emergency. OCs are neutral throughout the evaluation.

(2) Once the senior OC has issued the OPORD and movement order, the company commander executes the events and actions prescribed in the first part of the evaluation scenario within the estimated time. From this point on, all successive parts begin with a FRAGO.

(3) The senior OC terminates a part when the company has completed all the events and actions in a particular area or has suffered so many casualties or so much damage that the part cannot be completed. The OC must record the reasons for the termination in the margin of the Task Summary Sheet and report the action to the evaluation control headquarters. In the sample evaluation scenario, the completion of each event or action is indicated by "conduct sustaining operations." During this period, the senior OC will direct the company to remain in position while "replacements" (personnel and equipment designated as killed or destroyed) are sent forward to reconstitute the unit. At this time, OCs must perform the following actions:

(a) Inspect all MILES equipment, record "kill" codes, and reset equipment. Replace any damaged or inoperative MILES equipment.

(b) Promptly resolve all casualty data to determine the time, place, number, and cause of casualties. Report this information to the recorder in the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Debrief the company to resolve questions. The senior OC then directs the company to continue its mission after it receives a FRAGO or OPORD for the next part.

(4) These guidelines should be followed by the OCs.

(a) Report major "kills" (vehicles, groups).

(b) Report major weapons fired. Together with reporting major kills, this is the best method for determining direct fire effectiveness. Both significant firings and hits are reported to the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Enforce rules of engagement.

(d) Observe critical tactical events of time. The OCs must spot and record any action that might have an effect on later performance or mission outcome.

(e) Record travel routes and unit locations.

(f) Inform OPFOR controller of the unit's locations, direction, and intent. This is necessary to enable OPFOR actions to be controlled in accordance with the desired sequence of events.

(g) Enforce safety.

(h) Terminate mission.

c. Post-evaluation. After the evaluation is terminated, the company moves to an assembly area and performs the following actions:

(1) The company OC debriefs subordinate OCs and compiles all data (evaluator packets) for the evaluation.

(2) The company OC completes the Task Summary Sheets.

(3) The company OC turns in all completed OC packets (with the OCs' scoring system) to control headquarters for recording and analysis.

(4) The company OC conducts an AAR of the company's performance.

(5) Each element OC should conduct an AAR of the element's performance.

#### **6-8. Conducting the After-Action-Review.**

a. General. At the completion of each evaluation part, the AAR leader provides feedback to the company in order to increase and reinforce learning.

b. Feedback. Because all members of the unit participate in an AAR, each member becomes a source of feedback. This provides a richer "data base" for key points. The AAR leader will draw information from each member which becomes an important part of the discussion. This information is the basis for discussing alternative courses of action.

c. Preparing the AAR. AAR preparation involves five steps:

(1) Review training orders and objectives. Training objectives are the focus of the discussion of the exercise results. The FRAGOs and OPORDs included in the exercise design implement these objectives. The OCs should be familiar with the objectives, FRAGOs, and OPORDs so that they can note orders given by leaders of the evaluated unit and its subordinate elements that either implement these objectives or deviate from them.

(2) Observe the exercise. This is an active process, and the emphasis is on noting those actions that make the difference between unit success and failure. The OC does not need to remain close to the unit leader because more can be seen from high ground near the lead element's location or along the unit's route when moving. Because unit orders identify important activities and checkpoints, the OC must be present when the command issues the orders. The OC should take a position where anticipated critical events can be observed. Examples of critical events include the following:

(a) Loss of major weapons system or item of equipment.



- (b) Major breach of security.
- (c) Major command and control failures.
- (d) Acquisition of important intelligence.
- (e) Successful deceptive maneuver.
- (f) Occupation or control of major terrain features.
- (g) Neutralization or destruction of major OPFOR capabilities, elements, or weapons.

(3) Select the site and assemble the participants. After the exercise, select a site for the AAR. If possible, hold the AAR where most of the critical events took place (normally where the OPFOR was positioned), or where the terrain can be observed. Usually the OPFOR or unit objectives are suitable for assembling the players and conducting AARs.

(4) Debrief the OCs. While the units are moving to the selected site, the OCs should be debriefed. The senior OC must have a complete understanding of what happened in the exercise. The fourth step in AAR preparation is to obtain a detailed description of the exercise's events in the order in which they occurred.

(5) After the senior OC has a sound understanding of what happened during the exercise, he or she reviews the events and ranks them in terms of their relevance to exercise training objectives and their contribution to the exercise outcome. The senior OC selects as many events as can be covered in the time allowed for the AAR and places them in chronological order.

d. Conducting the AAR. Conducting the AAR requires five steps:

(1) Organize the participants. When the senior OC and AAR leader assemble the participants, they group them according to their organization in the exercise. Subordinate OCs are with the units for which they are responsible.

(2) State the training objectives. The AAR leader makes a brief statement of the training objectives for the exercise. These are described as specifically as possible. The AAR leader states any additional teaching points which will be covered during the AAR. These should be limited to three or four key points to keep the AAR focused and prevent it from becoming excessively long.

(3) Lead the discussion. The AAR leader guides the discussion of the events in their order of occurrence. Diagrams help players visualize the exercise development. The AAR leader starts by sketching the main terrain features, and as the AAR proceeds, has the participants draw routes of advance, objectives, and locations of engagements. Each event is discussed in detail to make teaching points about the unit's performance during the event. In an effective AAR, the AAR leader should--

- (a) Avoid giving a critique or lecture.
- (b) Guide the discussion by asking leading questions.
- (c) Suggest the players describe what occurred in their own terms.
- (d) Suggest the players discuss not only what happened, but also how it happened, and how it could have been done better.
- (e) Focus the discussion to ensure that important tactical lessons are made explicit.

- (f) Relate tactical events to subsequent results.
- (g) Avoid detailed examination of events not directly related to major training objectives.
- (h) Encourage the participants to draw diagrams to illustrate teaching points and to show routes, phase lines, and objectives.
- (i) Prohibit players from offering self-serving excuses for inappropriate tactical action.

(4) Review the sequence of the events associated with the hazards of the risk assessment made prior to the exercise.

- (a) Were effective controls put in place to avoid accidents?
- (b) Was training realism reduced through artificial control measures?
- (c) Were all participants aware of hazards down to the lowest level?
- (d) Did any hazard present itself that was not identified, and what was done to overcome it?
- (e) Discuss each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it can be avoided in the future.

(5) Summarize key points. The AAR leader briefly summarizes teaching points in terms of training objectives covered in the AAR. After the summary, the AAR leader may have a private conversation with the company commander regarding strengths and weaknesses and what can be done to further improve personal and unit performance. A good AAR leader--

- (a) Maintains order and discipline.
- (b) Reviews training objectives.
- (c) Addresses important events as they occurred and how the company could have done them better. During the discussion, the AAR leader avoids a detailed examination of events not directly related to the training objective.
- (d) Traces the chain of events so all participants understand the results of mistakes. One mistake is often the partial cause of another.
- (e) Clearly relates tactical events to teaching points.
- (f) Involves participants in the discussion.
- (g) Clearly and concisely gives the summary and new training objectives.
- (h) Reinforces points by using sketches, diagrams, or terrain models in the AAR.

e. Reference materials for conducting an AAR are TC 25-6, TC 25-20, FM 25-101.

## APPENDIX A

### Combined Arms Training Strategy

#### **A-1. General.**

a. The Combined Arms Training Strategy was developed to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and to identify the resources required to support that training. Upon implementation, CATS will support training integration of heavy, light, and special operations forces of both Active Component and Reserve Component soldiers. It will enable the Army to more effectively identify, manage, and program the acquisition of training resources vital to achieving and sustaining the combat readiness of the total Army.

b. The CATS concept envisions an overarching strategy that will enable the Army to focus and manage all unit and soldier training in an integrated manner. At the heart of CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit training strategies that describe the events, frequencies, and resources required to train soldiers and units to standards. These strategies will provide field commanders with a descriptive menu for training. We recognize that while there may be a "best" way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units will have the exact mix of resources required to execute the strategy precisely as written.

#### **A-2. Elements of the Unit Strategies.**

a. **Maneuver Strategy.** The maneuver strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and to depict those resources required to support these events. Each column contains the number of iterations of each event recommended for annual execution by a specific echelon or level. This number reflects how many times a unit will train at that particular level. The numbers at each echelon/level stand alone. Therefore, it is not necessary to add the frequencies in the event column to determine the number of times a unit participates in a training event annually. For example, 12 STXs at the AC platoon level mean that the platoon participates in 12 STXs regardless of the frequencies at other levels. The 12 STXs can be trained as a platoon, with the company, with the battalion, or with any combination of these units.

b. **Gunnery Strategy.** The gunnery strategy is built around weapon systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapon training. Gunnery strategies have been developed by schools identified in DA Pam 350-38 as proponents for weapons or weapon systems. Data for the gunnery strategy comes from DA Pam 350-38 and appropriate FMs and TMs.

c. **Soldier Strategy.** The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier.

**A-3. Guide to the Maneuver Strategy.** The following paragraphs provide a guide to reading and using the strategy. We will use the military police maneuver training strategy as our maneuver example. (See Figure A-1.)

| MILITARY POLICE COMPANY MANEUVER TRAINING STRATEGY   |       |       |      |                    |       |         |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |            |         |                  |
|--|-------|-------|------|--------------------|-------|---------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|------------|---------|------------------|
| EVENTS LEVELS  | DRILL | MAPEX | TEWT | CELL/STAFF SEC TNG | TOCEX | STAFFEX | CPX | FCX | STX | LCX | CFX | DEPEX | FTX | EXEVAL CTC | JTX CTX | CSS CUS SPT OPNS |
| TEAM AC  |       |       |      |                    |       |         |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |            |         |                  |
| TEAM RC  |       |       |      |                    |       |         |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |            |         |                  |
| SQUAD AC   |       |       |      |                    |       |         |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |            |         |                  |
| SQUAD RC   |       |       |      |                    |       |         |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |            |         |                  |
| PLT AC   |       | 3     | 1    |                    |       |         | 3   |     | 4   | 4   |     | 4     | 3   | 1          | 1       |                  |
| PLT RC   |       | 1     |      |                    |       |         | 1   |     | 2   | 1   |     | 1     | 1   | 1          | .25     |                  |
| CO AC  |       | 3     | 1    |                    |       |         | 3   |     | 4   | 4   |     | 4     | 3   | 1          | 1       |                  |
| CO RC  |       | 1     |      |                    |       |         | 1   |     | 2   | 1   |     | 1     | 1   | 1          | .25     |                  |
| BN AC  |       |       |      |                    |       |         |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |            |         |                  |
| BN RC  |       | 1     |      | 4                  |       | 2       | 1   |     | 2   | 1   |     | 1     | 1   | 1          | .25     |                  |
| CRITICAL GATES   |       |       |      |                    |       |         |     |     |     |     |     |       | STX | FTX        |         |                  |
| RESOURCES  |       |       |      |                    |       |         |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |            |         |                  |
| OPTEMPO  |       |       |      |                    |       |         |     |     | 120 |     |     | 20    | 480 | 480        | 40      |                  |
| AMMO   |       |       |      |                    |       |         |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |            |         |                  |
| TADSS  |       |       |      |                    |       |         |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |            |         |                  |
| TNG LAND   |       |       |      |                    |       |         |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |            |         |                  |
| TNG RG   |       |       |      |                    |       |         |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |            |         |                  |
| 1. TADSS<br>#1 MILES II<br>2. THE TRAINING AREA MUST BE LARGE ENOUGH TO SUPPORT THE MANEUVER UNIT IAW TC 25-1. |       |       |      |                    |       |         |     |     |     |     |     |       |     |            |         |                  |

Figure A-1. Military Police Maneuver Training Strategy.

a. Across the top of the maneuver strategy are major training events. The order in which the events appear, from left to right, is not designed to be prescriptive; however, the events do follow a logical progression of how a unit might proceed through an annual training cycle. Explanations of these events are found in FM 25-100 and FM 25-101.

b. On the left side of the maneuver strategy is the column titled "Levels." This column lists the echelons that train on the events. For each echelon there is an AC and RC line for the listing of the appropriate training frequencies.

c. Each column lists the number of iterations each event is recommended for execution annually by a specific echelon or level. The number of iterations reflect how many times a unit will train at that particular level. To determine how many times a unit participates in a training event annually, add the frequencies in the event column. For example, look at the training event, MAPEX. Recommended here is that an AC platoon conduct MAPEX training three times a year. For another example, look at the training event, FTX. Recommended here is that AC platoons conduct platoon FTXs three times a year. As you can see, this platoon would participate in a total of six FTXs during the year: three at platoon level and three at company level.

d. Under levels is a training category called "Critical Gates." Critical gates are training events that must be conducted to standard before moving onto a more difficult or resource intensive event or task. The Military Police School has determined that STXs are critical gates for an FTX and has placed the STX on the critical gates line beneath the FTX. It is intended that the unit commander ensure the STX is conducted to standard before proceeding to the FTX.

e. At the bottom part of the maneuver strategy is a section for identifying the resources which will be used to support each training event. This form shows five categories of resources: OPTEMPO, ammunition, TADSS, training land, and training ranges.

f. The OPTEMPO is the amount and type of petroleum products (fuel, oil, lubricants) and repair parts used in a training event. Quantities listed for training events are based on a C-1 (highest) level of readiness from the unit status report.

(1) The figures reflect total mileage or hours per event for the base vehicle or equipment listed in the BLTM. The base vehicle for the MP Corps is the HMMWV. For example, the BLTM allocated a total of 20 miles for the HMMWV to conduct a DEPEX. Since four exercises are recommended, each exercise should be resourced accordingly.

(2) The proponent school has the flexibility to adjust OPTEMPO figures for training events, provided they do not exceed the authorized total listed in the BLTM. Where there is no BLTM, proponents will list the current consumption rate for the base vehicle or equipment.

g. Ammunition figures are listed by event and come from DA Pam 350-38. Maneuver training strategies will reflect only blank ammunition requirements while live ammunition requirements are depicted on the gunnery strategies.

h. The TADSS support specific training events. Listed are those system and nonsystem TADSS that have been fielded. The local TSC can provide information on the TADSS available locally, and DA Pam 350-9 provides an index and description of all available TADSS.

i. Training land is a resource category that will list land requirements by event for an echelon to conduct maneuver training. Following the fielding of TC 25-1, training requirements will be addressed in the strategies found in the manual.

j. The training ranges section identifies types of ranges required for a training event.

**A-4. Guide to the Gunnery Strategy.** The following paragraphs provide a guide to reading and using the strategy. We will use the attached weapon strategies as gunnery examples. (See Figures A-2 through A-6.)

a. Gunnery strategies were developed by the schools identified in the DA Pam 350-38 as proponents for the weapons or weapon systems. This relieves nonproponent schools of the responsibility for constructing gunnery strategies. Infantry is the proponent for the M16 and developed this strategy which is applicable to all branches.

b. Training events are shown in the top position of the gunnery strategy. The levels or echelons that will train on these tasks are shown on the left. As shown, qualification for the M16 is conducted at the individual level. The critical gate tasks for qualification are listed in FM 23-9. The unit commander will ensure the soldier meets all these requirements before moving onto qualification.

c. Frequency depicts how often the tasks listed in the upper part of the strategy should be conducted annually. Per guidance provided in the DA Pam 350-38, the frequency block for the M16 has been divided into two categories: Category I applies to soldiers with either an 11B or 11M MOS assigned to an infantry rifle squad or a 19D or 11B assigned to a scout squad or long-range surveillance detachment. Category II applies to all combat arms, combat support, and combat service support soldiers not assigned to rifle or infantry squads.

d. These two categories are further subdivided by training readiness condition in accordance with the DA Pam 350-38. They are TRC A = AC units, TRC L = light infantry, air assault and airborne units; TRC S = special reaction teams (AC, military police teams), TRC C = RC units, TRC D = USAR training division, reception stations and separate training brigades, and NGB training cadre.

e. Training categories and training readiness conditions provide an all-encompassing set of training frequencies.

f. M16 training does not require OPTEMPO.

g. Figures for ammunition are per DA Pam 350-38. Qualification with the M16 requires 160 rounds of ball and 20 rounds of tracer ammunition per weapon.

h. The TADSS line shows the following simulators are recommended to support M16 qualification: the multipurpose arcade combat simulator, the shoot/don't shoot stress training device, the weaponeer, and the location of miss and hit.

| M16A1/A2/M-4 CARBINE TRAINING STRATEGY                           |                         |                              |                              |                |                      |
|--|-------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------|----------------------|
|  | PRELIMINARY INSTRUCTION | ZERO                         | QUAL                         | NBC            | NIGHT FIRE           |
| INDIVIDUAL   |                         | x                            | x                            |                |                      |
| TEAM   |                         |                              |                              |                |                      |
| SQUAD  |                         |                              |                              |                |                      |
| PLATOON  |                         |                              |                              |                |                      |
| COMPANY  |                         |                              |                              |                |                      |
| BATTALION  |                         |                              |                              |                |                      |
| CRITICAL GATES   |                         | IAW FM 23-9                  | IAW FM 23-9                  |                |                      |
| REQUIREMENT  |                         |                              |                              |                |                      |
| CA/CS/   | A                       | 4                            | 1                            | 1              | 1                    |
| CSS  | L                       |                              |                              |                |                      |
| ARMS   | S                       | 4                            | 1                            | 4              | 1                    |
|  | C                       | 4                            | 1                            | 1              |                      |
|  | D                       | 4                            | 1                            | .5             | .5                   |
| RESOURCES  |                         |                              |                              |                |                      |
| OPTEMPO  |                         |                              |                              |                |                      |
| AMMO   | NONE                    | 18 BALL                      | 80 BALL<br>10 TRACER         | 40 BALL        | 40 BALL<br>20 TRACER |
| TADSS  | EST/WPNR/MACS<br>SDSSTD | WPNR/MACS<br>LOMAH<br>SDSSTD | WPNR/MACS<br>LOMAH<br>SDSSTD |                |                      |
| TNG LAND   |                         |                              |                              |                |                      |
| TNG RANGE  |                         | 25M ZERO - RG                | AUTO FIRE - RG               | AUTO FIRE - RG | AUTO FIRE - RG       |
| QUAL INCLUDES DAYLIGHT, NBC AND NIGHT PRACTICE, AND RECORD FIRE. |                         |                              |                              |                |                      |

Figure A-2. M16A1/A2/M-4 Carbine Training Strategy.

| PISTOL TRAINING STRATEGY  |                         |                    |         |         |            |          |
|---|-------------------------|--------------------|---------|---------|------------|----------|
|   | PRELIMINARY INSTRUCTION | INSTRUCTIONAL FIRE | QUAL    | MP QUAL | NIGHT FIRE | NBC QUAL |
| INDIVIDUAL  | x                       | x                  | x       | x       | x          | x        |
| TEAM  |                         |                    |         |         |            |          |
| SQUAD   |                         |                    |         |         |            |          |
| PLATOON   |                         |                    |         |         |            |          |
| COMPANY   |                         |                    |         |         |            |          |
| BATTALION   |                         |                    |         |         |            |          |
| CRITICAL GATES  |                         |                    |         |         |            |          |
| REQUIREMENT   |                         |                    |         |         |            |          |
| CA/CS/  | A                       | 4                  | 1       | 1       | 1          | 1        |
| CS  | L                       |                    |         |         |            |          |
| ARMS  | S                       | 8                  | 8       | 4       | 4          | 1        |
|   | C                       | 1                  | 1       | 1       | 1          |          |
|   | D                       | 1                  | 1       | 1       | .5         |          |
| RESOURCES   |                         |                    |         |         |            |          |
| OPTEMPO   |                         |                    |         |         |            |          |
| AMMO  |                         | 10 BALL            | 50 BALL | 60 BALL | 20 BALL    | 20 BALL  |
| TADSS   | SDSSTD                  | SDSSTD             | SDSSTD  | SDSSTD  | SDSSTD     |          |
| TNG LAND  |                         |                    |         |         |            |          |
| TNG RANGE   |                         | CPQC               | CPQC    | MPFQC   | MPFQC      | MPFQC    |
| NOTES: 1. MP will qualify at least once annually on the MP Firearms Qualification Course. The commander will determine if the second qualification will be on the MPFQC or the CPQC based on unit mission.<br>2. Unit firing the MPFQC will conduct NBC Record Fire IAW CPQC. |                         |                    |         |         |            |          |

Figure A-3. Pistol Training Strategy.



| MK19 TRAINING STRATEGY   |                         |                  |                  |                  |                 |                  |                        |
|--|-------------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------------|
|  | PRELIMINARY INSTRUCTION | GNR TEST         | ZERO PRACTICE    | RECORD           | NIGHT RECORD    | QUAL             |                        |
| INDIVIDUAL   |                         |                  |                  |                  |                 |                  |                        |
| TEAM   |                         |                  |                  |                  |                 |                  |                        |
| SQUAD  |                         |                  |                  |                  |                 | LFX              |                        |
| PLATOON  |                         |                  |                  |                  |                 | LFX              |                        |
| COMPANY  |                         |                  |                  |                  |                 |                  |                        |
| BATTALION  |                         |                  |                  |                  |                 |                  |                        |
| CRITICAL GATES   |                         | FM 23-27<br>W/C1 | FM 23-27<br>W/C1 | FM 23-27<br>W/C1 |                 | FM 23-27<br>W/C1 |                        |
| REQUIREMENT  |                         |                  |                  |                  |                 |                  |                        |
| CA/CS/<br>CSS<br>ARMS  | A<br>L<br>S<br>C<br>D   | 4<br><br>2<br>2  | 4<br><br>4<br>4  | 2<br><br>1<br>1  | 2<br><br>1<br>1 | 2<br><br>1<br>1  | 1<br><br>.5<br>.5(MOD) |
| RESOURCES  |                         |                  |                  |                  |                 |                  |                        |
| OPTEMPO  |                         |                  |                  |                  |                 |                  |                        |
| AMMO   |                         | 10 DUMMY         | 30 TP            | 42 TP            | 22 TP           | 94 TP            |                        |
| TADSS  | EST                     |                  | SDSSTD           | SDSSTD           | SDSSTD          | SDSSTD           |                        |
| TNG LAND   |                         |                  |                  |                  |                 |                  |                        |
| TNG RANGE  |                         | IMPACT AREA      | IMPACT AREA      | IMPACT AREA      | IMPACT AREA     | IMPACT AREA      |                        |
| A/GNRs FIRE TABLES C-1, 2, 5, 6, 7 USING 68 TP ANNUALLY FOR ALL TRCs EXCEPT BIENNIALY FOR TRC C & D. QUAL INCLUDES TABLES C-5, 6, 7, W/ 6 ALSO FIRED IN MOPP4. |                         |                  |                  |                  |                 |                  |                        |

Figure A-4. MK-19 Training Strategy.

| <b>M-249 LIGHT MACHINE GUN TRAINING STRATEGY</b>                 |                         |               |                 |                          |                   |                            |
|--|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------|
|  | PRELIMINARY INSTRUCTION | ZERO PRACTICE | RECORD          | TRANSITION ZERO/PRACTICE | TRANSITION RECORD | NIGHT ZERO PRACTICE/RECORD |
| INDIVIDUAL   |                         |               |                 |                          |                   |                            |
| TEAM   |                         |               |                 |                          |                   |                            |
| SQUAD  |                         |               |                 |                          |                   |                            |
| PLATOON  |                         |               |                 |                          |                   |                            |
| COMPANY  |                         |               |                 |                          |                   |                            |
| BATTALION  |                         |               |                 |                          |                   |                            |
| CRITICAL GATES   |                         | IAW<br>APP FM | IAW<br>APP FM   | IAW<br>APP FM            |                   |                            |
| <b>REQUIREMENT</b>   |                         |               |                 |                          |                   |                            |
| CA/CS/   | A                       | 4             | 1               | 1                        | 1                 | 1                          |
| CSS  | L                       |               |                 |                          |                   |                            |
| ARMS   | S                       | 2             | 1               |                          | 1                 |                            |
|  | C                       | 4             | 1               | 1                        | 1                 | .5                         |
|  | D                       |               |                 |                          |                   |                            |
| <b>RESOURCES</b>   |                         |               |                 |                          |                   |                            |
| OPTEMPO  |                         |               |                 |                          |                   |                            |
| AMMO 5.56  |                         | 57 BALL       | 51 BALL         | 78 MIX                   | 66 MIX            | 90 MIX                     |
| TADSS  | EST                     |               | LOMAH<br>SDSSTD | LOMAH<br>SDSSTD          |                   |                            |
| TNG LAND   |                         |               |                 |                          |                   |                            |
| TNG RANGE  |                         |               | 10M RG          | MPMG<br>RG               | MPMG<br>RG        |                            |
| QUAL INCLUDES DAYLIGHT, NBC AND NIGHT PRACTICE, AND RECORD FIRE. |                         |               |                 |                          |                   |                            |

**Figure A-5. M-249 Light Machine Gun Training Strategy.**

| <b>M203 GRENADE LAUNCHER TRAINING STRATEGY</b>              |                         |              |              |                      |
|---|-------------------------|--------------|--------------|----------------------|
|   | PRELIMINARY INSTRUCTION | ZERO         | QUAL         | NIGHT RECORD TAB 8-3 |
| INDIVIDUAL  |                         |              |              |                      |
| TEAM  |                         |              |              |                      |
| SQUAD   |                         |              |              |                      |
| PLATOON   |                         |              |              |                      |
| COMPANY   |                         |              | LFX          |                      |
| BATTALION   |                         |              |              |                      |
| CRITICAL GATES  |                         | IAW FM 23-31 | IAW FM 23-31 |                      |
| REQUIREMENT   |                         |              |              |                      |
| CA/CS/  | A                       | 4            | 1            | 1                    |
| CSS   | L                       |              |              |                      |
| ARMS  | S                       | 4            | 1            | 1                    |
|   | C                       | 2            | 1            |                      |
|   | D                       | 4            | 1            | .5                   |
| RESOURCES   |                         |              |              |                      |
| OPTEMPO   |                         |              |              |                      |
| AMMO  |                         | 6 TP         | 12 TP        | 3 HE                 |
| TADSS   |                         |              |              |                      |
| TNG LAND  |                         |              |              |                      |
| TNG RANGE   |                         | MPMG<br>RG   | MPMG<br>RG   | MPMG<br>RG           |
| QUAL INCLUDES TABLE 8-2 RECORD FIRE AND TABLE 8-3 NBC FIRE. |                         |              |              |                      |

**Figure A-6. M203 Grenade Launcher Training Strategy.**

**A-5. Guide to the Soldier Strategy.** The following paragraphs provide a guide to reading and using the sample soldier training strategy. (See Figure A-7.)

a. While the gunnery and maneuver strategies focus more at the collective level, the soldier strategy focuses on individual skills and soldier tasks. This strategy may be applied collectively to a career management field or singularly to a military occupational specialty.

b. Training events selected for the 95B MOS are listed across the top of the strategy. In the left column are frequencies depicting how often an event should be executed on an annual basis. Active Component soldiers are represented by the letters "AC" and Reserve Component soldiers by the letters "RC." The letter "X" is placed in the event column on the line corresponding with AC or RC. The letter "T" will be placed in the event column for testing requirements on the AC or RC line.

c. For the 95B MOS, the Military Police School has listed no resources to support training.

| SOLDIER TRAINING STRATEGY   |            |      |              |         |     |          |                         |         |           |             |           |
|---|------------|------|--------------|---------|-----|----------|-------------------------|---------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| EVENT FREQUENCY (1)   | PHYS TNG   | APFT | SGTs TIME(2) | MOS TNG | CTT | CTT TEST | COMMON MIL TNG (CMT)(3) | NBC TNG | MAINT TNG | LDR DEV TNG | WPNS QUAL |
| DAILY   | AC X<br>RC |      |              | X       |     |          |                         |         |           |             |           |
| WEEKLY  | AC<br>RC   |      |              | X       |     |          |                         |         | X         | X           |           |
| MONTHLY   | AC<br>RC X |      | X            | X       | X   |          |                         | X       | X         | X           |           |
| QUARTERLY   | AC<br>RC   |      |              |         |     |          |                         | X       |           |             |           |
| SEMI-ANNUAL   | AC<br>RC   | T    |              |         |     |          |                         |         |           |             | X         |
| ANNUAL  | AC<br>RC   |      | T            |         | X   | T        |                         |         |           |             | X         |
| BIENNIAL  | AC<br>RC   |      |              |         |     | T        |                         |         |           |             |           |
| AS REQUIRED   |            |      |              |         |     |          | X                       |         |           |             |           |
| RESOURCES   |            |      |              |         |     |          |                         |         |           |             |           |
| OPTEMPO   |            |      |              |         |     |          |                         |         |           |             |           |
| AMMO  |            |      |              |         |     |          |                         |         |           |             |           |
| TADSS   |            |      |              |         |     |          |                         |         |           |             |           |
| TNG LAND  |            |      |              |         |     |          |                         |         |           |             |           |
| TNG RG  |            |      |              |         |     |          |                         |         |           |             |           |
| <p>NOTES: 1. Frequencies are based on average soldier requirements; areas may be trained more often based on NCO feedback and commander's assessment to support METL proficiency.</p> <p>2. SGT'S time is time on the unit TNG SCHED for SGTs to conduct individual training to support METL.</p> <p>3. CMT is mandatory training IAW AR 350-1.</p> <p>4. Leadership development includes OPD, NCOPD, career counseling, education skills, etc.</p> <p>5. PT is only required to be conducted 3 times per week.</p> <p>6. A = ACTIVE COMPONENT, R = RESERVE COMPONENT, T = TESTING REQUIREMENT.</p> |            |      |              |         |     |          |                         |         |           |             |           |

Figure A-7. Soldier Training Strategy.

## APPENDIX B

### VERB LIST

**B-1. General.** Words have different meanings to different people. Even dictionaries do not always agree on exact meanings of words and the connotation of a word may depend on the person, the circumstances, and the context in which it is used.

**B-2. Definitions.** Trainers, performers, and evaluators must apply a consistent meaning to verbs because the verb describes the action that must be taken to perform a task. The following definitions are from TRADOC Regulation 350-70. These are the intended meanings whenever the verbs are used in a collective task, STX, or FTX in this publication.

- Conduct: To direct or control, lead or guide.
- Coordinate: To bring into common action, movement, or condition.
- Determine: To settle or decide by choice of alternatives or possibilities.
- Develop: To set forth or make clear by degrees or in detail.
- Direct: To regulate the activities or course by acting through subordinate leaders; to control through suggestions and guidelines.
- Employ: To make use of.
- Enforce: To see that the provisions (of an order or regulation) are carried out effectively.
- Ensure: To make certain; to guarantee.
- Establish: To bring into existence; to introduce as a permanent entity or procedure.
- Identify: To determine critical or necessary conditions or other factors.
- Maintain: To preserve, fix, or keep in good repair.
- Monitor: To watch, observe, or check, especially for a special purpose.
- Perform: To carry out an action or pattern of behavior.
- Plan: To devise or project; to formulate a systematic scheme or program of action.
- Prepare: To put together; to combine elements and produce a product; to make ready.
- Process: To initiate a series of actions or operations leading to a particular end.
- Provide: To supply or make available.
- Report: To present an account officially; to formally or regularly carry back and repeat to another; to provide information on ongoing activities.

- Supervise: To oversee; to critically watch, motivate, and direct the activities of subordinates.
- Support: To aid or help.
- Update: To bring up to date or to make current.

## GLOSSARY

### ACRONYMS, ABBREVIATIONS, AND DEFINITIONS

|              |  |
|--------------|--|
| AAR          | After-Action Review: A method of providing feedback to units by involving the participants in the training diagnosis process in order to increase and reinforce learning. The AAR is structured around sequential exercise events and the AAR leader guides the participants to identify errors and to seek solutions themselves.  |
| AC           | Active Component   |
| ADA          | Air Defense Artillery  |
| Agnrs        | Assistant Gunners  |
| AL           | Alabama  |
| Ammo         | ammunition   |
| AO           | Area of Operations   |
| AOAP         | Army Oil Analysis Program  |
| AOR          | Area of Responsibility   |
| APC          | Armored Personnel Carrier  |
| APFT         | Army Physical Fitness Test   |
| App          | appropriate  |
| AR           | Army Regulation  |
| ARTEP        | Army Training and Evaluation Program: This is the US Army training and evaluation program that prescribes the missions and collective tasks that a unit must perform to accomplish its mission and survive on the battlefield. For the trainer, ARTEP provides the tasks, conditions, minimum standards, and training support requirements that assist in the conduct of performance-oriented training. For the training manager, ARTEP is a tool that will aid in assessing training proficiency, establishing training objectives, and programming resources. The ARTEP consists of the MTP, drills, soldier's manuals, and other training products required training a unit to proficiency. |
| AS           | Area Security  |
| ASP          | Ammo Supply Point  |
| ASPS         | All Source Production Section  |
| AT           | Anti-Tank  |
| Attn         | attention  |
| AWOL         | Absent Without Leave   |
| AV           | Audiovisual  |
| Battle drill | A collective action executed by a platoon or smaller element without application of a deliberate decision making process. The action is vital to success in combat or critical to preserving life. The drill is initiated on a cue, such as an enemy action or simple leader's order, and is a trained response to a given stimulus. It requires minimal leader orders to accomplish and is standard throughout the Army.  |
| BCOC         | Base Cluster Operation Center  |
| BDAR         | Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair   |
| Bde          | brigade  |
| BDOC         | Base Defense Operation Center  |



|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| BHL                             | Battle Handoff/Over Line  |
| BLTM                            | Battalion Level Training Model  |
| Bn                              | Battalion   |
| BOS                             | Battlefield Operating System  |
| Bty                             | Battery   |
| BUA                             | Built-up Area   |
|                                 |   |
| C                               | Centigrade  |
| C2                              | Command and Control   |
| CA                              | Combat Arms   |
| CALFEX                          | Combined Arms Live Fire Exercise  |
| C&C                             | Command and Control   |
| CAS                             | Close Air Support/Casualty  |
| CATS                            | Combined Arms Training Strategy   |
| CCIR                            | Commander's Critical Information Requirements   |
| CDR                             | Commander   |
| Centralized training            | Training that releases the authority and responsibility for the detailed planning, conduct, and internal evaluation of training to the battalion or separate company level. Brigade headquarters and above retain the responsibility for providing mission-type guidance to their subordinate units, allocating training resources, and providing coordination, while the broad supervision and evaluation of training may be conducted at company level.   |
|                                 |   |
| CFX                             | Command Field Exercise  |
| CG                              | Command Group   |
| cGy                             | Centigray; a unit of absorbed dose of radiation   |
| CI                              | Civilian Internee   |
| Cm                              | Centimeter  |
| Cmd                             | Command   |
| CMT                             | Common Military Training  |
| Co                              | Company   |
| COA                             | Course of Action  |
| COL                             | Colonel   |
| Collective task                 | A unit of work that requires the efforts of more than one person for its completion or that must be accomplished by a whole echelon such as a platoon, a company, or a battalion. Collective tasks have identifiable start and end points and result in a measurable accomplishment or product. Subtasks or elements of a collective task may be individual tasks in their own right. A collective task may be as simple as the replacement of an equipment part that is too heavy or cumbersome for one person to replace or the use of a weapon system too complex for one person to operate or manipulate, or it may be as complex as actions required of an overall mission that are then further refined into subtasks and individual tasks. |
| Collective training             | Training in units to prepare cohesive teams and units to accomplish their combined arms and services missions on the integrated battlefield.  |
| Collective training proficiency | The ability of a unit to successfully Perform its missions to ARTEP standards.  |

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Combat operations         | for military police, those actions taken to seek out, close with, and when they can, destroy enemy forces in the rear area. This is to prevent the enemy from delaying the commander's reinforcing units, disrupting his command and control, and destroying his nuclear weapons capability. This also allows the commander to keep his major tactical units fighting the main battle. |
| Combat readiness          | the ability of a unit to perform in combat. Combat readiness considers the status of personnel, equipment, and training. Collective training proficiency, based on the ARTEP, is only <u>one</u> consideration in determining combat readiness.  |
| Combined arms             | the combination of combat, combat support, and combat service support components of the force structure to accomplish a tactical or strategic mission.   |
| COMEX                     | Communications Exercise  |
| Command post exercise     | an exercise designed to train leaders and staff officers to plan and execute tactical operations without requiring the presence and participation of the soldiers in the unit.   |
| Common collective tasks   | Those collective tasks that apply to units in general or to many units that have different service school proponents. "Set up personnel decontamination station" is an example of a common collective task.  |
| COMMZ                     | Communications Zone  |
| COMSEC                    | Communications Security  |
| Conditions                | the situation/environment in which the unit will be expected to accomplish a task.   |
| CONUS                     | Continental United States  |
| CP                        | Command Post   |
| CPQC                      | Combat Pistol Qualification Course   |
| CPR                       | Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation  |
| CPT                       | Captain  |
| CPX                       | Command Post Exercise  |
| Crew drill                | A collective action that a crew of a weapon or piece of equipment must perform to use the weapon or equipment successfully in combat or to preserve life. This action is a trained response to stimulus such as a simple leader order or the status of the weapons or equipment. It requires minimal leader order to accomplish and is standard throughout the Army.                   |
| Critical collective task  | A collective task identified by front-end analysis that provides an immediate, direct, or significant impact on the ability of a unit to accomplish a specific wartime mission or to survive on the battlefield.   |
| Critical wartime missions | those missions, assigned or implied, that a unit must accomplish in wartime. Critical wartime missions are identified during the conduct of front-end analysis as missions that are vital to the unit's success or survival on the battlefield.  |
| CS                        | chemical stimulant   |
| CSS                       | combat service support   |
| CTA                       | common table of allowances   |
| CTC                       | Combat training Center   |
| CTT                       | common task training   |
| CTX                       | command training exercise  |
| CUS                       | Customer   |

|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| DA                   | Department of the Army   |
| DC                   | Dislocated Civilian  |
| DD                   | Department of Defense (forms)  |
| DZ                   | Drop Zone  |
| DEF                  | Defense  |
| DEPEX                | Deployment Exercise  |
| Dev                  | Development  |
| Decon                | Decontamination  |
| Diagnostic feedback  | Identifies by mission, task, and subtask specifically <u>what</u> the unit did or failed to accomplish and <u>why</u> . This feedback may be a written or a mental process. The recommendations to correct identified weaknesses must be provided if those weaknesses were not corrected during the training and evaluation exercise. Diagnostic feedback must be provided to the leader or commander responsible for the training and evaluation of the unit.                     |
| Dislocated civilians | A new, generic term that replaces the subcategories of refugees, displaced persons, and evacuees.  |
| Div                  | division   |
| DOD                  | Department of Defense  |
| Drill book           | Drill books are separate documents developed for squads and platoons or equivalent units. They provide a limited number of DA standard methods (battle drills or crew drills) for executing selected standard critical collective tasks.   |
| DS                   | direct support   |
| DRF                  | Division Ready Force   |
| DTG                  | date-time group  |
| E                    | East   |
| EAC                  | Echelons Above Corps   |
| EAD                  | Echelons Above Division  |
| ECM                  | Electronic Countermeasures   |
| EEFI                 | essential element of friendly information  |
| EMP                  | Electromagnetic Pulse  |
| Employment           | to commit a force in support of an operation plan  |
| EN                   | Corp of Engineers  |
| EOC                  | Emergency Operation Center   |
| EOD                  | Explosive Ordnance Disposal  |
| EPW                  | Enemy Prisoner of War  |
| EPW/CI               | Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees  |
| ERP                  | Enroute reporting points   |
| EST                  | Estimate   |
| Eval                 | evaluation: That process which, by objective and subjective means, seeks to determine the extent of learning progress of teams or units. The purpose of evaluation is to determine if training objectives have been attained. It provides the training manager with the information he needs to modify or update his training program. In a formal evaluation this process provides the evaluator with the information he needs to judge the success or failure of a team or unit. |
| Evaluation personnel | Those individuals selected to administer the formal evaluation phase of the Army Training and Evaluation Program and determine if the unit being evaluated meets the primary evaluation standards.   |

|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Evaluation plan                  | A method or outline of a set of procedures that will be used to gather data and information for the purpose of assessing a course of instruction or other training product.   |
| EW                               | Electronic Warfare  |
| EXEVAL                           | external evaluation   |
| External training and evaluation | An exercise sponsored by a higher Headquarters for the purpose of training and evaluating the ability of the subordinate unit(s) to achieve training objectives. The worth of this process is directly related to the quality of the trainer-evaluators and the assistance provided. Key to this effort is comprehensive diagnostic feedback and immediate follow-on training and evaluation to correct training weaknesses. They may vary in formality from a battalion or brigade commander furnishing comments on observations made from a visit during training or an external evaluation team with a detailed written scenario, providing feedback during a formal critique. |
| F                                | Fahrenheit  |
| FAO                              | Finance and Accounting Office   |
| FASCAM                           | Family of Scattered Mines   |
| FCX                              | Fire Coordination Exercise  |
| FD                               | Firing Device   |
| FDC                              | Fire Detection/Direction Controller   |
| FDF                              | Field Detention Center  |
| FEBA                             | Forward Edge of the Battle Area   |
| FH                               | Frequency Hopping   |
| FM                               | Field Manual  |
| FI                               | Finance Corps   |
| F/MLFX                           | Fire/Maneuver Live Fire Exercise  |
| FO                               | Forward Observer  |
| FPF                              | Final Protective Fire   |
| FRAGO                            | Fragmentary Order   |
| FSO                              | Fire Support Officer  |
| Ft                               | Feet  |
| FTX                              | Field Training Exercise: An exercise conducted in the field under simulated combat conditions in which the troops and armament of one side are actually present while those of the other side may be imaginary or partially or fully represented by a second force (OPFOR).   |
| Function                         | A named category, descriptive of a subject under which tasks are listed. In some MTPs, functions are used instead of missions.  |
| FY                               | fiscal year   |
| G                                | Nerve Agent   |
| G1                               | Assistant Chief of Staff, Personnel   |
| G2                               | Assistant Chief of Staff, Intelligence  |
| G3                               | Assistant Chief of Staff, Operations and Plans  |
| G4                               | Assistant Chief of Staff, Logistics   |
| G5                               | Assistant Chief of Staff, Civil Affairs   |
| Gnr                              | Gunner  |
| GRREG                            | Graves Registration   |
| GS                               | General Support   |
| GSR                              | Ground Surveillance Radar   |

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| H                                 | Blister Agent  |
| HC                                | Hexachloroethane   |
| HE                                | High Explosive   |
| HD                                | Distilled Mustard Gas  |
| HHC                               | Headquarters and Headquarters Company  |
| HHQ                               | Headquarters and Headquarters Detachment   |
| HMMWV                             | High-Mobility Multipurpose Wheeled Vehicle   |
| HN                                | Host Nation  |
| HQ                                | Headquarters   |
| HR                                | Hour   |
| HS                                | Home Station   |
| HUMINT                            | Human Intelligence   |
| <br>                              |  |
| I.e.                              | That is  |
| IAW                               | in accordance with   |
| ICRC                              | International Committee of the Red Cross   |
| ID                                | identification   |
| Implied mission                   | A collection of tasks visualized as one, accepted by an individual or unit as a service to be performed or an activity to be carried out though not specified by their commander or supervisor. Implied missions are derived from an analysis of a specified mission.  |
| <br>                              |  |
| Individual/collective integration | The concept of identifying the specified and implied individual tasks, leader tasks, and collective tasks or missions to maximize integration of individual and collective training. The identification process shows the relationship between individual tasks and collective training tasks or missions. The process also illustrates the relationship between the individual tasks themselves. The material shows the existence of individual training dependencies and gives the trainer a diagnostic measure to determine weak areas for corrective training. By listing leader tasks, the material also assists the planning and conduct of multiechelon training. Finally, the training manager may select any special individual tasks supporting the skill development test of soldiers of the unit and emphasize those tasks by training for the appropriate ARTEP missions. |
| <br>                              |  |
| Individual task                   | A unit of work activity that constitutes a logical and necessary step in the performance of a job or duty. Descriptions of task statements should be detailed enough to provide minimal step-by-step directions and guidance that an individual in training could follow to complete the task successfully. A task is the smallest unit of behavior in a job that describes the performance of a meaningful function in the job under consideration.   |
| <br>                              |  |
| Inf                               | infantry   |
| INT                               | intelligence   |
| Internal training and evaluation  | An exercise sponsored, controlled, and evaluated by the performing unit for the purpose of self-evaluation and correction of weaknesses. This provides the trainer-evaluator with a means to train and simultaneously evaluate the ability of the unit to perform its critical combat missions and tasks.  |
| <br>                              |  |
| INTSUM                            | intelligence summary   |
| IPB                               | intelligence preparation of the battlefield  |
| I/R                               | Internment/Resettlement  |

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| ISN         | internment serial number  |
| ITEP        | individual training evaluation program  |
| JTX         | joint training exercise   |
| JUMPS       | Joint Uniform Military Pay System   |
| Kg          | kilogram  |
| KIA         | killed in action  |
| Km          | kilometer   |
| Kp          | kitchen patrol  |
| LAW         | light antitank weapon   |
| lb          | pound   |
| LC          | line of contact   |
| LCX         | logistic coordination exercise  |
| Ldr         | leader  |
| Leader task | A task performed by a leader and necessary to initiate or control a collective task. Leader tasks generally involve planning, supervising, inspecting, reporting, managing, and similar actions.  |
| LFX         | live fire exercise  |
| LO          | Learning Objective  |
| L&O         | Law & Order   |
| LOMAH       | location of miss and hit  |
| LP          | listening post  |
| LT          | lieutenants   |
| LTC         | lieutenant colonel  |
| LZ          | Landing Zone  |
| m           | meter   |
| M9          | Chemical Detection Paper  |
| MACS        | multipurpose arcade combat simulator  |
| Maint       | maintenance   |
| MAN         | maneuver  |
| MAPEX       | map exercise  |
| MARKS       | Modern Army Record-Keeping System   |
| MBA         | main battle area  |
| Mech        | mechanized  |
| MEDDAC      | medical activity  |
| METL        | mission essential task list   |
| METT-TC     | mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available and civilian considerations   |
| MG          | machine gun   |
| MI          | Military Intelligence   |
| MIJI        | meaconing, intrusions, jamming, and interference  |
| MIL         | Master Incident List  |
| MILES       | multiple integrated laser engagement system: A family of eye-safe lasers and laser detectors designed to simulate direct fire weapons of various types. Instead of firing a projectile, the weapons shoot a blank that activates a laser and sends a pulse of energy, coded for the type of weapon, downrange. Receiving detectors, located on opposing troops and vehicles, pick up the laser pulses and instantly provide audiovisual indications of a hit, kill, or near miss. |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| Mission                                | Major TOE activities performed by recognized TOE echelons. Missions may be assigned or implied by the TOE or a major command to support local contingencies. Stated missions are those missions stated in a unit's TOE or in related mission documents. Implied missions are those missions not found in a unit's TOE or in related documents, but which analysts determine are required to be performed. |
| Mission outlines                       | Mission outlines are graphic portrayals of the relationships between critical wartime missions and the subordinate tasks inherent to those missions. Mission outlines are designed to provide the commander with a visual outline of the unit's critical wartime missions in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training at his level.  |
| mm                                     | Millimeter  |
| MMS                                    | Maneuver and Mobility Support   |
| Mob                                    | Mobility  |
| MOGAS                                  | Motor Gasoline  |
| MOPP                                   | Mission-Oriented Protective Posture   |
| MOS                                    | Military Occupational Specialty   |
| MOUT                                   | Military Operations on Urban Terrain  |
| MP                                     | Military Police   |
| MPFQC                                  | Military Police Firearms Qualification Course   |
| MPI                                    | Military Police Investigation   |
| MPMG                                   | Military police Machine Gun   |
| MPRC                                   | Multi-Purpose Range Complex   |
| MQS                                    | Military qualification standards  |
| MSR                                    | Main Supply Route   |
| MTP                                    | mission training plan   |
| Multi-echelon training and evaluation: | A technique wherein training is simultaneously accomplished at more than one echelon, such as conducting staff training at battalion level, leader training at platoon and company level, and drill training at squad, crew, or section level. Multi-echelon training and evaluation is an inherent design characteristic of MTP.   |
| MWD                                    | military working dogs   |
| MWR                                    | Morale Welfare and Recreation   |
| NA                                     | not applicable  |
| NATO                                   | North Atlantic Treaty Organization  |
| NBC                                    | Nuclear, Biological, Chemical   |
| NCO                                    | Noncommissioned Officer   |
| NCODP                                  | Noncommissioned Officer Professional Development  |
| NCOIC                                  | Noncommissioned Officer in Charge   |
| NCS                                    | Net Control Station   |
| NGB                                    | National Guard Bureau   |
| NLT                                    | not later than  |
| NSN                                    | National Stock Number   |
| NVD                                    | Night Vision Devices  |
| OC                                     | Observer-Controller   |
| OD                                     | Olive Drab  |
| OEG                                    | Operational Exposure Guidance   |
| OES                                    | Officer Education System  |

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| OFS                            | Officer Foundation Standards   |
| OIC                            | Officer in Charge  |
| OJT                            | On the Job Training  |
| OP                             | Observation Post   |
| OPCON                          | Operational Control  |
| OPD                            | Officer Professional Development   |
| OPFOR                          | opposing force: An organized force created from US Army units to portray the doctrine, tactics, and configuration of a potential adversary armed force during US Armed Forces training. (See AR 350-2 and FM 34-71.)   |
| OPLAN                          | Operations Plan  |
| Opns                           | Operations   |
| OPORD                          | Operation Order  |
| OPSUM                          | Operations Summary   |
| OPSEC                          | Operation Security   |
| OPTEMPO                        | Operating Tempo  |
| OR                             | Operating Resources/Operational Readiness  |
| ORP                            | Objective Rally Point  |
| P                              | Need Practice  |
| P&A                            | Personnel and Administration   |
| Pam                            | Pamphlet   |
| PDDE                           | Power-driven decontamination equipment   |
| Performance-oriented training: | A training strategy in which learning is accomplished through individual or team/unit performance of one or more tasks under specified conditions until the individual or team/unit can demonstrate the level of proficiency established by the training standard. The basis for conducting performance-oriented training is a training objective. |
| PEWS                           | Platoon Early Warning System/Sensors   |
| Phys                           | Physical   |
| PIO                            | Police Intelligence Operations   |
| PIR                            | Priority Intelligence Requirement  |
| PLL                            | Prescribed Load List   |
| Plat                           | Platoon  |
| PM                             | Provost marshal  |
| PMCS                           | Preventive Maintenance Check and Services  |
| POL                            | Petroleum, Oils and Lubricants   |
| POS/NAV                        | Position/Navigation  |
| PRR                            | Personnel Requirements Report  |
| PSC                            | Personnel Service Company  |
| PSG                            | Platoon Sergeant   |
| PSR                            | Personnel Status Report  |
| PSYOPS                         | Psychological Operations   |
| QRF                            | Quick Reaction Force   |
| Qual                           | Qualification  |
| RAOC                           | Rear Area Operations Center  |
| RC                             | Reserve Component  |
| RDS                            | Rounds   |



|           |   |
|-----------|---|
| Readiness | The ability of a military unit to perform its wartime mission.  |
| Ref       | Reference   |
| Req       | Required  |
| Rg        | Range   |
| ROE       | Rules of Engagement   |
| RP        | Release Point   |
| RT        | Radio Transmitter   |
| RX        | Repairable Exchange   |
|           |   |
| S         | Safety use  |
| S1        | Adjutant  |
| S2        | Intelligence Officer  |
| S3        | Operations and Training Officer   |
| S4        | Supply Officer  |
| S5        | Civil Affairs Officer   |
| SALUTE    | Size, Activity, Location, Unit, Time, Equipment   |
| SAM       | School of Aviation Medicine   |
| SASO      | Stability and Support Operations  |
| SAT       | Systems Approach to Training  |
| SATRAN    | Satellite Transmissions   |
| SAW       | Squad Automatic Weapon  |
| SB        | Supply Bulletin   |
| SC        | Single Channel  |
| SCHD      | Schedule  |
| SCOPES    | Squad Combat Operations Exercise (simulation)   |
| SDSSTD    | Shoot/Don't Shoot Stress Training Device  |
| SF        | Standard Form   |
| SFC       | Sergeant First Class  |
| SGT       | Sergeant  |
| SIDPERS   | Standard Installation/Division Personnel System   |
| SIGINT    | Signal Intelligence   |
| SIGSEC    | Signal Security   |
| SITREP    | Situation Report  |
| SL        | Skill Level   |
| SM        | Soldier's Manual  |
| SMCT      | Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks  |
| SOI       | Signal Operation Instruction  |
| SOP       | Standing Operating Procedure  |
| SP        | Start Point   |
| SPT       | Support   |
| Sq        | Square  |
| Sqd       | Squad   |
| Sqdn      | Squadron  |
| SSG       | Staff Sergeant  |
| SSI       | Signal Supplemental Instructions  |
| STAFFEX   | Staff Exercise  |
| STANAG    | Standardization Agreement   |
| Std       | Standard: A description of the minimum degree of training proficiency that a specific type of unit must achieve to accomplish its mission or that a soldier must achieve to support the mission and survive on the battlefield. |

|                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| STP                      | soldier training publication: These are task-specific publications that support individual training and evaluation of critical tasks. This group of publications consists of soldier's manuals, trainer's guides, job books, and military qualification standards manuals.   |
| STRAC                    | Standards in Training Commission   |
| STRESS                   | search, tag, report, evacuate, segregate, and safeguard  |
| STX                      | situational training exercise: A collective training exercise that is composed of drills, leader tasks, and separate individual tasks. STXs are more complex than drills, but are like drills because they train a specific task or group of tasks and represent a "chunk of battle" with a definite starting and stopping point. An STX may be a sequential execution of several drills, but a drill will never be made up of several STXs. Unlike drills, STXs are not prescriptive; that is, they do not show the only way to execute a task, but merely a doctrinally correct way.   |
| Subtasks                 | Constituent actions or units of work in normal sequential order that are required to fully perform the collective task. Subtasks will identify leader tasks and functions performed by some or all of the unit members. Subtasks are used to group and sequence standards in a logical manner. Subtasks may be individual or collective. They each identify the leader, individuals, unit, or element responsible for performing the subtask.  |
| SUPCOM                   | support command  |
| Supportive relationships | Skills and knowledge in one objective that have some relationship to those in another objective; the learning involved in mastery of one learning objective transfers to another, making learning involved in the mastery of the other easier.   |
| T                        | Trained  |
| T                        | Trainer use  |
| TAACOM                   | Theater Army Area Command  |
| TADSS                    | Training Aids, Devices, Simulators and Simulations   |
| Tailoring                | The process of modifying MTPs, FTXs, and STXs by the trainer-evaluator to train a unit based on its unique needs or limitations. Tailoring of an MTP is accomplished by developing overall training objectives through the BLTM process, and using these training objectives to produce scenarios of specific STXs, battle drills, and leader and individual tasks to be trained in order to accomplish the overall training objectives. FTXs and STXs are modified to fit the scenarios, but battle drills and individual tasks are not modified. In the case of units with severe resource constraints, tailoring will also include limiting the echelon to be trained to proficiency, as well as number and type of missions to be trained. |
| TAMMS                    | The Army Maintenance Management System   |
| TASCOM                   | Theater Army Support Command   |
| TB                       | Technical Bulletin   |
| TBP                      | to be published  |
| TC                       | Training Circular  |
| TCF                      | Tactical Combat Force  |
| TDA                      | Tables of Distribution and Allowances  |

|                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| T&EO               | Training and Evaluation Outline: T&EOs contain the task, conditions, and standards for each collective task. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP. They provide measurable objective performance standards that form the basis for training, internal evaluations, and formal external evaluations.   |
| TEWT               | Tactical Exercise Without Troops   |
| TG                 | Trainer's Guide  |
| TM                 | Technical Manual   |
| Tng                | Training   |
| TOC                | Tactical Operations Center   |
| TOCEX              | Tactical Operations Center Exercise  |
| TOE                | Table of Organization and Equipment  |
| TP                 | Target Practice  |
| TRADOC             | Training and Doctrine Command  |
| Trainer            | A person whose duties include the requirement to prepare, conduct, and evaluate a period of instruction or training. For example: (1) An MP squad leader who is required to prepare, conduct, and evaluate weapons maintenance training for squad members. (2) An MP platoon leader who is required to prepare, conduct, and evaluate land navigation training for noncommissioned officers.   |
| Trainer-evaluator  | A dual integrated role of any person who uses the MTP for training and evaluation.   |
| Training           | Those formal activities designed to prepare individuals and teams or units for job/duty performance.   |
| Training equipment | Items of equipment such as rifles, vehicles, aircraft, motion picture projectors, engines, and test equipment, or their components. Although used for training, they do not lose their identity as end items and therefore are not training devices.   |
| Training manager   | A person who is responsible for planning, organizing, conducting, and evaluating training, including the development of training programs. Training managers include any commander who develops a training program or who provides guidance to a commander who does. Under present Army policies (AR 350-1), battalion and separate company commanders are the principal training managers. However, company commanders or the operations/training officers of commands developing training programs are also training managers. |
| Training matrix    | This matrix relates the training products (STXs and battle drills) to the MTPs and their associated FTXs on the one hand, and to the individual and leader tasks on the other hand. The training matrix shows training relationships, not necessarily training or performance sequences.   |
| Training objective | A three-part statement that describes training and evaluation as follows:<br><br><ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Task--A statement that describes exactly what is to be done.</li><li>b. Conditions--The situation or environment in which a task should be performed.</li><li>c. Standard--The minimum acceptable performance required (quantifiable when possible) for successful accomplishment of the task.</li></ol>   |
| TRC                | Training Readiness Condition   |

|                 |   |
|-----------------|---|
| TRL             | Trailer   |
| TRP             | Target Reference Point  |
| TSC             | Training Support Center   |
| TSOP            | Tactical Standing Operating Procedure   |
| U               | Untrained   |
| U               | Unit Use  |
| UCMJ            | Uniform Code of Military Justice  |
| UMR             | Unit Manning Report   |
| unit evaluation | A measurement of a unit's proficiency against an established standard at a specific moment of time. Evaluations are run in strict accordance with the evaluation scenario, regardless of the unit's success or failure in accomplishing specific tasks. Evaluations are designed to be administered by the headquarters two echelons above the evaluated unit and are a tool for the appropriate chain of command echelon to determine proficiency in specific missions or tasks. |
| US              | United States   |
| USAR            | United States Army Reserve  |
| USR             | Unit Status Report  |
| Va              | Virginia  |
| w/c1            | with change 1   |
| WIA             | Wounded In Action   |
| WPNR            | Weaponeer   |
| Wpns            | Weapons   |
| XO              | Executive Officer   |

## REFERENCES

### SOURCES USED

These are the sources quoted or paraphrased in this publication.

#### Army Regulation (AR):

25-30 The Army Integrated Publishing and Printing Program. 28 February 1989.  
Change 1, 2 August 1993. Supplement 1, 15 February 1994.

#### Field Manuals (FMs):

25-100 Training the Force. 15 November 1988.

25-101 Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990.

#### TRADOC Regulations (TRegs):

25-30 Preparation, Production, and Processing of Armywide Doctrinal and Training Literature. 30 March 1990.

25-31 TRADOC Armywide Doctrinal and Training Literature Program.  
30 March 1990.

350-70 Training Development Management, Processes, and Products.  
24 September 1995.

#### TRADOC Pamphlet (TPam):

350-38 Standards in Weapons Training

350-70-1 Guide for Producing Collective Training Products. 15 March 1996.

## DOCUMENTS NEEDED

These documents must be available to the intended users of this publication.

#### Army Regulations (ARs):

5-13 Training Ammunition Management System. 20 December 1994.

27-1 Legal Services, Judge Advocate Legal Service. 3 February 1995.

27-10 Military Justice. 24 June 1996.

190-8 Enemy Prisoners of War--Administration, Employment and Compensation. 1 June 1982.

190-11 Physical Security of Arms, Ammunition and Explosives. 30 September 1993.

190-13 The Army Physical Security Program. 30 September 1993.

#### Army Regulations (ARs) (continued):

190-57 Civilian Internees - Administration, Employment and Compensation. 4 March 1987.  
220-1 Unit Status Reporting. 1 September 1997.  
350-1 Army Training. 1 August 1981.  
350-2 Opposing Force Program. 15 June 1983.  
350-41 Training in Units. 19 March 1993.  
380-5 Department of the Army Information Security Program. 25 March 1988.  
385-10 Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988.  
385-40 Accident Reporting and Records. 1 November 1994.  
385-63 Policies and Procedures for Firing Ammunition for Training, Target Practice and Combat. 15 October 1983.  
530-1 Operations Security (OPSEC). 3 March 1995.  
600-8-1 Army Casualty and Memorial Affairs and Line of Duty Investigations. 20 October 1994.  
600-8-6 Personnel Accounting and Strength Reporting. 20 May 1994.  
750-1 Army Materiel Maintenance Policy and Retail Maintenance Operations. 1 August 1994.

**Department of the Army Forms (DA Forms):**

1155 Witness Statement on Individual. June 1966.  
1156 Casualty Feeder Report. June 1966.  
1594 Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log. November 1962.  
2028 Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms. February 1974.  
2665-R Capture Card for Prisoner of War. May 1982.  
3161 Request for Issue or Turn-In. May 1983.  
5367-R Personnel Status Report. December 1984.

**Department of the Army Pamphlets (DA Pams):**

25-30 Consolidated Index of Army Publications and Blank Forms. 1 Oct 1997.  
350-9 Index and Description of Army Training Devices. 9 December 1988.  
385-1 Small Unit Safety Officer/NCO Guide. 22 September 1993.  
710-2-1 Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures). 1 June 1982.

**Department of the Army Pamphlets (DA Pams)(continued):**

- 738-750 Functional User Manual for The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994.
- 750-1 Leader's Unit Level Maintenance Handbook. 15 February 1994.

**Department of Defense Regulations and Manuals:**

- 4500.32-R Military Standard Transportation and Movement Procedures (Vol. 1). 15 March 1987.
- 5100.76-M Physical Security of Sensitive Conventional Arms, Ammunition, and Explosives. 3 February 1983.

**Field Manuals (FMs):**

- 3-3 Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992.
- 3-4 NBC Protection. 29 May 1992.
- 3-5 NBC Decontamination. 17 November 1993.
- 3-100 NBC Defense, Chemical Warfare, Smoke, and Flame Operations. 8 May 1996.
- 5-36 Route Reconnaissance and Classification. 10 May 1985.
- 5-103 Survivability. 10 June 1985.
- 8-9 NATO Handbook on the Medical Aspects of NBC Defensive Operations. 1 February 1996.
- 8-10 Health Service Support in a Theater of Operations. 1 March 1991.
- 8-10-6 Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques and Procedures. 31 October 1991.
- 8-285 Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries. 22 December 1995.
- 9-13 Ammunition Handbook. 4 November 1986.
- 10-27-4 Organizational Supply for Unit Leaders. 21 July 1994.
- 19-1 Military Police Support for the Airland Battle. 23 May 1988.
- 19-4 Military Police Battlefield Circulation Control, Area Security, and Enemy Prisoner of War Operations. 7 May 1993.
- 19-10 Military Police Law and Order Operations. 30 September 1987.
- 19-15 Civil Disturbances. 25 November 1985.
- 19-20 Law Enforcement Investigations. 25 November 1985.

**Field Manuals (FMs) (continued):**

- 19-25 Military Police Traffic Operations. 30 September 1977.

- 19-30 Physical Security. 1 March 1979.
- 19-40 Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees, and Detained Persons. 27 February 1976.
- 19-60 Confinement and Correctional Treatment of US Military Prisoners. 27 May 1986.
- 20-3 Camouflage. 14 November 1990.
- 21-10 Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 22 November 1988.
- 21-11 First Aid for Soldiers. 27 October 1988.
- 21-20 Physical Fitness Training. 30 September 1992.
- 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation. 7 May 1993.
- 21-31 Topographic Symbols. 19 June 1961.
- 21-60 Visual Signals. 30 September 1987.
- 21-75 Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984.
- 22-51 Leaders' Manual for Combat Stress Control. 29 September 1994.
- 22-100 Military Leadership. 31 July 1990.
- 23-9 M16A1 Rifle and M16A2 Rifle Marksmanship. 3 July 1989.
- 23-27 Mk19, 40-mm Grenade Machine Gun, MOD 3. 27 December 1988.
- 23-31 40-mm Grenade Launcher, M203. 20 September 1994.
- 24-19 Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991.
- 24-33 Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990.
- 24-35 Signal Operations Instructions the "SOI". 26 October 1990.
- 24-35-1 Signal Supplemental Instructions. 2 October 1990.
- 25-4 How to Conduct Training Exercises. 10 September 1984.
- 25-5 Training for Mobilization and War. 25 January 1985.
- 27-10 The Law of Land Warfare. 19 July 1956.

**Field Manuals (FMs) (continued):**

- 34-1 Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 27 September 1994.
- 44-8 Small Unit Self-Defense Against Air Attack. 30 December 1981.



90-13 River Crossing Operations. 30 September 1992.

100-5 Operations. 14 June 1993.

100-20 Military Operations in Low Intensity Conflict. 5 December 1990.

101-5 Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997.

100-5 Operations. 14 June 1993.

101-5-1 Operational Terms and Symbols. 30 September 1997.

**Soldier Training Publications (STPs):**

19-31II-MQS Military Qualification Standards II Military Police Branch (31) Company Grade Officer's Manual. 5 June 1991.

19-95B1-SM Soldier's Manual, MOS 95B, Military Police, Skill Level 1. 21 February 1997.

19-95B24-SM-TG Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 95B, Military Police, Skill Levels 2/3/4. 21 February 1997.

21-1-SMCT Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 1994.

21-24-SMCT Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Level 2-4.1 October 1992.

21-I-MQS Military Qualification Standards I Manual of Common Tasks (Precommissioning Requirements).31 May 1990.

21-II-MQS Military Qualification Standards II Manual of Common Tasks for Lieutenants and Captains. 31 January 1991.

**Training Circulars (TCs):**

11-4 Handbook for AN/VRC-12 Series of Radio Sets. 8 April 1977.

11-6 Grounding Techniques. 3 March 1989.

25-1 Training Land. 30 September 1991.

25-6 Tactical Engagement Simulation Training with MILES. 3 October 1995.

### READINGS RECOMMENDED

These readings contain relevant supplemental information.

#### **TRADOC Pamphlet:**

TRADOC Pam 350-9 TRADOC Training Devices for Armywide Use (Available from:  
Commander, HQ TRADOC, ATTN: AG Publications Stockroom,  
Ft Monroe, VA 22304)

#### **Standardization Agreements (STANAGs):**

(Refer to Department of Defense Index Specifications and Standards)

- |      |  |
|------|--|
| 2033 | Interrogation of Prisoners of War (PW). 29 August 1986.  |
| 2084 | Handling and Reporting of Captured Enemy Equipment and Documents.<br>26 June 1986.   |
| 2103 | Reporting Nuclear Detonations, Biological and Chemical Attacks, and<br>Predicting and Warning of Associated Hazards and Hazard Areas. 31 March 1988. |
| 2154 | Regulations for Military Motor Vehicle Movement by Road. 19 October 1987.  |

NOTE: STANAGs are available from: Naval Publications and Forms Center, 5801 Tabor Avenue, Philadelphia, PA 19120. (DD Form 1425 may be used to requisition documents.)

**MISSION TRAINING PLAN  
USER FEEDBACK**

MTP NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_ DATE \_\_\_\_\_

MTP TITLE \_\_\_\_\_

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided for your use. Please answer all questions frankly and mail to: US Army Military Police School, ATTN: ATZN-MP-DA, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65437-5000.

**THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:**

- 1. What is your position? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. How long have you served in this position? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. How long have you served in this unit? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. What is your component? A. AC B. USAR C. NG
- 5. Where is your unit? A. CONUS B. USAREUR C. WESTCOM
- D. Eight US Army E. Other (specify) \_\_\_\_\_

**THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES .**

6. What STX would you recommend be added or deleted from the MTP?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

7. What FTX would you recommend be added or deleted from the MTP?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

8. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercise?

- A. Needs more information on how to set up the exercise.
- B. Needs more information on leader training.
- C. Needs more information on how to conduct the exercise.
- D. Needs more information on support and resources.

9. How many STXs or FTXs have you trained or participated in personally?

---

---

10. How often does your unit train on non military police tasks during the exercise?

---

---

---

---

**THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS APPLY TO CHAPTER 5.**

11. What changes would you make to the T&EOs in this chapter?

---

---

---

12. What T&EOs would you add ?

---

---

---

13. What T&EOs would you delete?

---

---

---

14 . Additional comments:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

ARTEP 19-313-30-MTP  
10 APRIL 1999

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

Official:

DENNIS J. REIMER  
*General, United States Army*  
*Chief of Staff*



JOEL B. HUDSON  
*Administrative Assistant to the*  
*Secretary of the Army*  
05782

**DISTRIBUTION:**

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and U.S. Army Reserve:* To be distributed in accordance with the initial distribution number 121629, requirements for ARTEP 19-313-30-MTP.

**PIN: 077211-000**